

NEW

# Opportunities

Education for life

Elementary

**Language Powerbook**

Olivia Johnston  
Christina Ruse  
Anna Sikorzyńska  
Hanna Mrozowska



PEARSON  
Longman

## Learning to Learn (pages 3–7)

### MODULE 1 Friends (pages 8–11)

**Vocabulary:** sports and hobbies, places, jobs, collocation  
**Grammar:** Present Simple affirmative and negative  
**Function:** meeting people  
**Skills Corner:** Listening – matching  
**Writing:** linking with *and*, an email  
**Review 1:** (page 12) **Key Words List:** (page 13)

### MODULE 2 Personality (pages 14–17)

**Vocabulary:** personality, moods, days, hobbies and interests, adjectives.  
**Grammar:** Present Simple questions, adverbs of frequency  
**Function:** preferences  
**Skills Corner:** Reading – matching  
**Writing:** capital letters, linking with *when*  
**Review 2:** (page 18) **Key Words List:** (page 19)

### MODULE 3 Around Town (pages 20–23)

**Vocabulary:** places, phrases with *get*  
**Grammar:** *there is/there are*  
**Function:** asking for tourist information  
**Skills Corner:** Speaking – roleplay  
**Writing:** linking with *and* and *but*, an entry for a tourist brochure  
**Review 3:** (page 24) **Key Words List:** (page 25)

### MODULE 4 Going Places (pages 26–29)

**Vocabulary:** things to do, months, weather, word building  
**Grammar:** possessive *'s*  
**Function:** describing the weather  
**Skills Corner:** Reading – true/false  
**Writing:** linking with *and* and *but*, *also* and *too*, an email to a friend  
**Language Problem Solving 1:** articles, possessive pronouns, *it's* and *its*  
**Review 4:** (page 30)

**Exam Zone** (pages 31–34) Use of English; Speaking; Reading; Listening and Writing

**Key Words List:** (page 35)

### MODULE 5 History (pages 36–39)

**Vocabulary:** history, masculine and feminine words, word building  
**Grammar:** Past Simple affirmative regular and irregular verbs  
**Function:** asking classroom questions  
**Skills Corner:** Writing – an announcement  
**Writing:** commas, spelling, linking words *after*, *and*, *because*, *before*, *when*, *then*  
**Review 5:** (page 40) **Key Words List:** (page 41)

### MODULE 6 Telling Stories (pages 42–45)

**Vocabulary:** fiction, cats, multi part verbs  
**Grammar:** Past Simple negatives and questions  
**Function:** telling and listening to stories  
**Skills Corner:** Speaking – photo description  
**Writing:** capital letters, punctuation marks, linking *suddenly*, *in the end*, *after that*, *when*  
**Review 6:** (page 46) **Key Words List:** (page 47)

### MODULE 7 Healthy Living (pages 48–51)

**Vocabulary:** food and drink, containers  
**Grammar:** *some*, *any*, *a lot of*  
**Function:** advice on good/healthy food  
**Skills Corner:** Listening – multiple choice  
**Writing:** commas, spelling, linking *but* and *however*, eating habits  
**Review 7:** (page 52) **Key Words List:** (page 53)

### MODULE 8 Sport (pages 54–57)

**Vocabulary:** sports, games and activities, sports equipment  
**Grammar:** *can/can't*, *have to/don't have to*  
**Function:** talking about sport  
**Skills Corner:** Reading – true/false  
**Writing:** spelling, linking *before*, *during* and *after*  
**Language Problem Solving 2:** *how much/how many*, subject and object questions  
**Review 8:** (page 58)

**Exam Zone** (pages 59–62) Use of English; Speaking; Reading; Listening and Writing

**Key Words List:** (page 63)

## MODULE 9 Holidays (pages 64–67)

**Vocabulary:** kinds of holiday, places to stay, positive adjectives, negative adjectives, same sound different words  
**Grammar:** Present Continuous all forms  
**Function:** asking for directions/a room at the hotel  
**Skills Corner:** Writing – a postcard  
**Writing:** punctuation marks, spelling, linking *and*, *also* and *too*  
**Review 9:** (page 68) **Key Words List:** (page 69)

## MODULE 10 Culture (pages 70–73)

**Vocabulary:** countries, musical instruments  
**Grammar:** Present Simple and Present Continuous  
**Function:** being polite, prepositions  
**Skills Corner:** Speaking – roleplay  
**Writing:** compound words, linking *after that*, *and*, *but*, *however*, *too*, *when*  
**Review 10:** (page 74) **Key Words List:** (page 75)

## MODULE 11 Image (pages 76–79)

**Vocabulary:** clothes, adjectives  
**Grammar:** comparative adjectives  
**Function:** describing people  
**Skills Corner:** Listening – matching  
**Writing:** spelling, capital letters, linking: *either ... or ...*  
**Review 11:** (page 80) **Key Words List:** (page 81)

## MODULE 12 Celebrities (pages 82–85)

**Vocabulary:** adjectives  
**Grammar:** superlative adjectives  
**Function:** making suggestions  
**Skills Corner:** Reading – matching  
**Writing:** question mark and full stop, review of linkers  
**Language Problem Solving 3:** indefinite pronouns, *it/there*  
**Review 12:** (page 86)

**Exam Zone** (pages 87–90) Use of English; Speaking; Reading; Listening and Writing

**Key Words List:** (page 91)

## MODULE 13 Volunteers (pages 92–95)

**Vocabulary:** voluntary work  
**Grammar:** *be going to*  
**Function:** speaking on the phone/phone conversation  
**Skills Corner:** Writing – a notice  
**Writing:** punctuation marks, spelling, linking *to* and *for*  
**Review 13:** (page 96) **Key Words List:** (page 97)

## MODULE 14 Shopping (pages 98–101)

**Vocabulary:** shopping places  
**Grammar:** predictions with *will*  
**Function:** shopping  
**Skills Corner:** Listening – true/false  
**Writing:** capital letters, personal letter  
**Review 14:** (page 102) **Key Words List:** (page 103)

## MODULE 15 Computers (pages 104–107)

**Vocabulary:** computers  
**Grammar:** Present Perfect all forms  
**Function:** giving instructions  
**Skills Corner:** Speaking – photo description  
**Writing:** punctuation marks, pronunciation, review of linkers, instructions  
**Review 15:** (page 108) **Key Words List:** (page 109)

## MODULE 16 Space (pages 110–113)

**Vocabulary:** space words, planets  
**Grammar:** Present Perfect with *ever*, *never*, *just*  
**Function:** expressing opinions  
**Skills Corner:** Writing – a letter  
**Writing:** punctuation marks, linking words  
**Language Problem Solving 4:** auxiliaries, zero conditional  
**Review 16:** (page 114)

**Exam Zone** (pages 115–118) Use of English; Speaking; Reading; Listening and Writing

**Key Words List:** (page 119)

Mini-Grammar

(pages 120–127)

# Learning to Learn

## A YOU Word Corner

Where are these capital cities?

- |                         |                 |
|-------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 London <u>Britain</u> | 7 Washington DC |
| 2 Budapest _____        |                 |
| 3 Rome _____            | 8 Ankara _____  |
| 4 Buenos Aires _____    |                 |
| 5 Brasilia _____        |                 |
| 6 Moscow _____          |                 |



## INTRODUCTIONS

Complete the dialogue.

Kerim: Hi, I'm Kerim. I'm a new student.

(1) \_\_\_\_\_?

Rosa: My name's Rosa. (2) \_\_\_\_\_, Kerim?

Kerim: I'm from Istanbul in Turkey.

(3) \_\_\_\_\_ Spain?

Rosa: No, (4) \_\_\_\_\_. I'm from Argentina.

## Grammar

### 1 ★ to be: affirmative and negative

Use the cues to write pairs of sentences.

- I/from the USA. (X) I/from Britain. (✓)  
I'm not from the USA. I'm from Britain.
- He/my teacher. (X) He/my friend. (✓)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- They/teachers. (X) They/students. (✓)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- We/from Istanbul. (X) We/from Ankara. (✓)  
\_\_\_\_\_

- 5 You/Simon! (X) You/Mark! (✓)  
\_\_\_\_\_

- 6 It/a photo of David Beckham. (X) It/a photo of Mike! (✓)  
\_\_\_\_\_

- 7 I/from London. (X) I/from Brighton. (✓)  
\_\_\_\_\_

### 2 ★ to be: questions

Write the questions for these answers.

- Are you from Italy?  
No, I'm not from Italy.
- \_\_\_\_\_  
Yes, you are in the photo.
- \_\_\_\_\_  
No, she isn't a teacher.
- \_\_\_\_\_  
Yes, he is a student.
- \_\_\_\_\_  
Yes, I am from Spain.
- \_\_\_\_\_  
Yes, we are in Class 5.

### 3 ★ to be: short answers

Complete the short answers.

- Are you from Turkey? Yes, I am.
- Is Kylie Minogue from the USA? No, she isn't.
- Are you a student? No, \_\_\_\_\_.
- Are Venus and Serena Williams from the USA? Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.
- Am I in that picture? No, \_\_\_\_\_.
- Are you from Spain? Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.
- Is Steve your boyfriend? Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.
- Are they students? No, \_\_\_\_\_.
- Am I in Class 6? Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.

# B YOUR CLASS

## 1 ★ Subject pronouns

Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

I, you (x2), he, she, it, we, they

- 1 Josh: Are you Lucy Moreton?  
Lucy: No, I am Lucy Wharton.
- 2 Andy: Are you from Australia?  
Sue and Tom: No, we are from Canada.
- 3 Nina: Is Britney Spears your favourite pop star?  
Ann: No, she isn't.
- 4 Sonia: Where is Russell Crowe from?  
John: he is from Australia.
- 5 Mark: Is your class big?  
Anna: No, it isn't.
- 6 Maria: Who are the actors in the photo?  
Kate: they are Jude Law and Cameron Diaz.

## 2 ★ Possessive adjectives

Put the words in order to make sentences.

- 1 Orlando/favourite/film/is/My/Bloom/star  
My favourite film star is Orlando Bloom.
- 2 English/is/Mr/Our/Sullivan/teacher  
Mr Sullivan is our English teacher.
- 3 are/English/videos/Where/your/?  
Where are your English videos?
- 4 are/names/and Sandra/Steve/Their  
Their names are Sandra and Steve.
- 5 Roger/favourite/Federer/His/is/sports/star  
His favourite sports star is Roger Federer.
- 6 favourite/film/her/Is/Shrek/?  
Is Shrek her favourite film?
- 7 are/bag/cassettes/in/My/my  
My cassettes are in my bag.

## 3 ★ ★ Subject pronouns and possessive adjectives

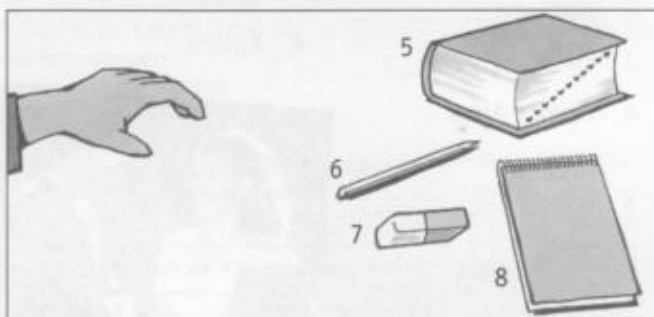
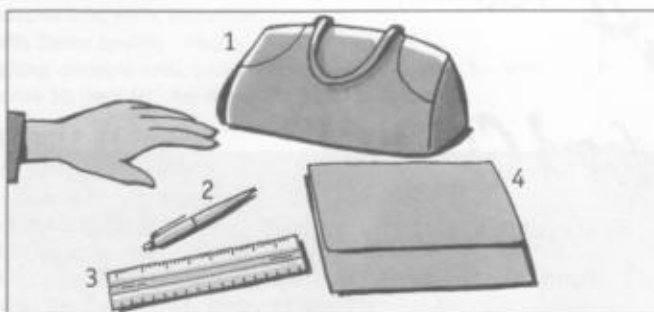
Circle the correct words.

- 1 My teacher's nice. She's/Her name is Mrs Diggory.
- 2 Their/They're from Cardiff.
- 3 Our/We're in Class 7A.
- 4 I'm/My favourite actor is Leonardo DiCaprio.
- 5 His/He's in a group with Amy, Glen and Oliver.
- 6 What are your/you're favourite activities?

# C YOUR CLASSROOM

## 1 ★ this and that

Write questions and answers about the pictures.



- 1 Q: What's this? A: It's a bag.
- 2 Q: What's that? A: It's a pen.
- 3 Q: What's that? A: It's a ruler.
- 4 Q: What's that? A: It's a book.
- 5 Q: What's that? A: It's a dictionary.
- 6 Q: What's that? A: It's a pen.
- 7 Q: What's that? A: It's an eraser.
- 8 Q: What's that? A: It's a notebook.

## 2 ★ ★ this/those, these/those

Circle the correct words.

- 1 This/These is my photo. It's Scarlett Johansson.
- 2 A: What is that/those?  
B: That's/Those are my new dictionary.
- 3 A: Is this/those your file?  
B: No, it isn't. That's/These are my file. It's green.
- 4 This is/These are my friend Britt. And that is/those are my friend Sven.
- 5 This/These aren't your pieces of paper. They're my pieces of paper.
- 6 That/Those isn't my bag. It's your bag.
- 7 A: Are this/these your pencils?  
B: No. Those/That are my pencils in that/those bag.
- 8 A: Who is that/these?  
B: This/That's my friend Sue.



# D YOUR HOMEWORK

## 1 ★ have/has got: affirmative and negative

Use the cues to write pairs of sentences.

- 1 Maria (✓) an encyclopedia  
(X) a dictionary

Maria's got an encyclopedia. She hasn't  
got a dictionary.

- 2 I (✓) a CD (X) a personal stereo

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 3 John (✓) a purple workbook  
(X) a purple notebook

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 4 I (X) a red pen (✓) a red pencil

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 5 We (✓) a classroom (X) a teacher

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 6 Dan and Sue (X) a television  
(✓) a computer

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 7 Kate (✓) a photo of Brad Pitt  
(X) a photo of Jude Law

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 8 Our classroom (X) a computer  
(✓) a television

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

## 2 ★ Questions and short answers with have/has got

Write six more questions and short answers in your notebook, like the example.

	Clare	Tim and Ben
1 football photos	X	✓
2 a Britney Spears cassette	✓	X
3 a photo of Brad Pitt	✓	X
4 a yellow desk	X	✓

Q: Has Clare got football photos in her room?

A: No, she hasn't.

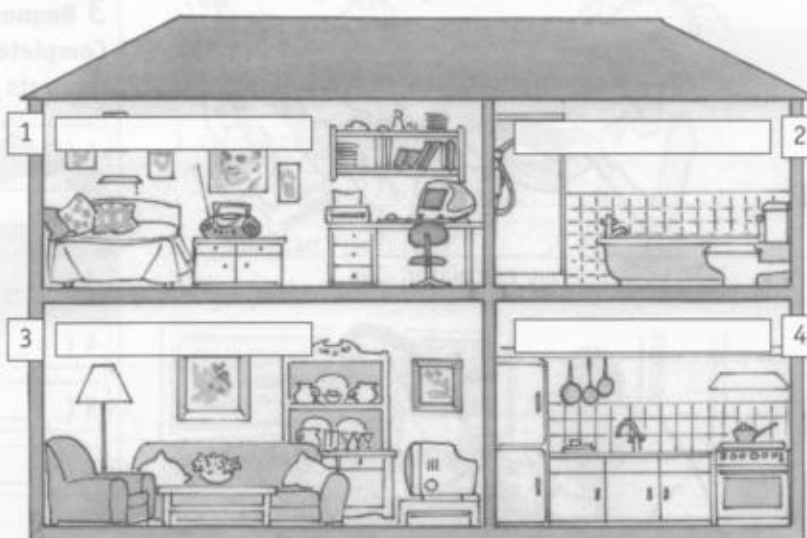
Q: Have Tim and Ben got football photos in their room?

A: Yes, they have.

## VOCABULARY

### 3 Write these words in the correct rooms (1-4) in the picture.

bathroom, bedroom, kitchen, sitting room



### 4 What have you got in your house? Write your sentences here.

1 We have got two blue pictures in our sitting room.

2 \_\_\_\_\_

3 \_\_\_\_\_

4 \_\_\_\_\_

5 \_\_\_\_\_

# CLASSROOM LANGUAGE

## 1 ★ Imperatives: affirmative

Complete the instructions with these words:

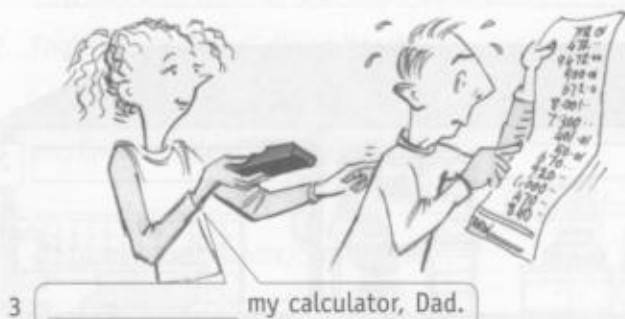
answer, ~~open~~, speak, use, write



1 Open your bag, please.



2 Answer the phone, please.



3 Show my calculator, Dad.



4 Write your name, please.



5 Speak English!

## 2 ★ Imperatives: negative

Make sentences by putting the words in order.

- at/don't/look/photos/Please/those  
Please don't look at those photos.
- Don't/friends/in/language/speak/to/your/your  
Don't speak to your friends in that language.
- class/Don't/in/mobile/phone/use/your  
Don't use your mobile phone in class.
- desk/Don't/name/on/the/write/your  
Don't write your name on the desk.
- Chris/don't/from/my/Please/postcard/read  
Please don't read the postcard from Chris.
- about/ask/don't/family/my/Please/questions  
Please don't ask my family about it.
- answers/coursebook/Don't/in/the/the/write  
Don't write the answers in the coursebook.

## 3 Requests: Can you

Complete the requests with *Can you*. Then match the requests to the answers.

- (f) Can you do Exercise 4, please?
- ( ) Can you spell your name, please, Atsuko?
- ( ) Can you use a pen, please?
- ( ) Can you find *write* in your dictionary, please?
- ( ) Can you work in pairs, please?
- ( ) Can you look at page 14, Maria?

a Is a blue pen OK?

b Can you spell it, please?

c Rob's got my book.

d I haven't got a partner.

e A-T-S-U-K-O

f On what page?

# F CHECK YOUR LEARNING

## 1 ★ can: affirmative

Complete the sentences with *He can* and one of these words:

use, play, say, swim, play

Meet  
SUPERKID!



1 He can play chess.



2 \_\_\_\_\_ 500 metres.

3 \_\_\_\_\_ the violin.



4 \_\_\_\_\_ a computer.

5 \_\_\_\_\_ the  
alphabet backwards.



## 2 ★ can: negatives

Write these sentences in the negative.

1 We can speak Russian.

We can't speak Russian.

2 They can play the guitar.

3 Tom can swim two kilometres.

4 My friend can count to 100 in English.

5 My teacher can understand Spanish.

6 Sonia can answer the questions.

## 3 ★ can: questions

Use these verbs to write questions with *can*, like the example. Then answer the questions.

play, speak, spell, read, use

1 you/encyclopedia?

Can you spell encyclopedia?

Yes, I can./No, I can't.

2 you/French?

3 your teacher/a computer?

4 your friends/your writing?

5 you/the guitar?



# 1 Friends

## Warm-up

1 Match these activities with the correct verb.



tennis, camping, gardening, chess, cycling, gymnastics, computer games, photography, the piano, swimming

do	go	play
gardening	swimming	

## 2 True or not?

Underline the part that is not true:

- His name is Beckham and he is from London.  
He plays tennis.
- She's seventeen and she sings. Her name is Madonna.
- He's from France. He sings and plays the piano. His name is Elton John.

## 1 GRAMMAR

### 1 ★ Present Simple: affirmative

Circle the correct form in each sentence.

- Anna (live/lives) in a beautiful flat in Liverpool.
- We (have/has) got two big dogs.
- My mother and father (get/gets) up early.
- You (ride/rides) your bike to school.
- My mother (watch/watches) music shows on TV.
- My brother (work/works) in a restaurant.
- Mark and Leila (read/reads) books in English.
- Andy (do/does) his housework at night.

### 2 ★ Third person singular: endings

Complete the table with these verbs.

use, study, play, go, speak, do, watch, read, say, swim

Write your answers in the correct column:

y + s	y + ies	+ s	+ es
_____	_____	<u>uses</u>	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____

### 3 ★ Third person singular: practice

Use the underlined verb to complete the second sentence.

- I like chess. My brother likes computer games.
- I go to Manchester University. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ to Bristol University.
- I study languages. My boyfriend \_\_\_\_\_ medicine.
- I watch films on TV. My father \_\_\_\_\_ sport.
- I do my homework on Friday. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ her homework on Sunday.
- I play the guitar. My mother \_\_\_\_\_ the piano.
- I like the radio. My cat \_\_\_\_\_ TV.



**4 ★ Present Simple: negative**

Complete the second sentence with the negative form of the underlined verb.

- I work in a garage. I don't work in a supermarket.
- Our dog likes the radio. It \_\_\_\_\_ television.
- Veronica and Natasha learn Russian. They \_\_\_\_\_ French.
- Caroline lives in a flat. She \_\_\_\_\_ with her family.
- We live in Brighton. We \_\_\_\_\_ in Bristol.
- He works in a bank. He \_\_\_\_\_ in a shop.
- I play volleyball. I \_\_\_\_\_ hockey.
- We make clothes in the factory. We \_\_\_\_\_ shoes.
- He listens to the radio in the car. He \_\_\_\_\_ to it in bed.
- They like rock music. They \_\_\_\_\_ jazz.

**5 ★ Present Simple: affirmative and negative**

Write sentences using the prompts.

- Pete/like (✓) French food (X) Italian food  
Pete likes French food. He doesn't like Italian food.
- I/live (✓) in London (X) in Manchester  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Dan/study (✓) mathematics (X) languages  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Dad/like (✓) chess (X) computer games  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Our cat/watch (✓) sport on TV (X) music shows  
\_\_\_\_\_
- We/work (✓) in a restaurant (X) in a shop  
\_\_\_\_\_
- You/go (✓) skiing (X) ice-skating  
\_\_\_\_\_
- My mum/do (✓) gardening (X) photography  
\_\_\_\_\_

**6 ★ Present Simple: affirmative and negative**

Complete the passage. Use the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Tomas Vanek \_\_\_\_\_ lives \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in Prague. He's a student but on Saturdays he (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (work)

in his mother's sports shop. 'I (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (love) sport. I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (play) football and hockey and I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) windsurfing in the holidays. My mother (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (think) tennis is great but she (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (not play) it. She (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) it on television! I (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (not watch) TV a lot. I haven't got time.'

**7 ★ ★ Present Simple: affirmative and negative**

Use the notes to write a paragraph in the Present Simple, like the one in Exercise 6. Write it in your notebook.

Andrea Robertson (live) Edinburgh – student but Saturdays (work) father's camera shop – 'I (love) photography – I (go) football and tennis games and (take) photos of sport – my father (think) photography is great but he (not take) photos! – he (read) a lot of photo magazines! – I (not read) photo magazines – I haven't got time.'

Andrea Robertson lives in Edinburgh. She's a student but ...

**8 ★ ★ ★ Present Simple (affirmative and negative)**

Write another five true sentences about you and your family, using the verbs in the box.

live, work, like, read, watch

- I live in Buenos Aires.
- My uncle works in a shoe factory.
- My mother doesn't like computer games.
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

**Word Corner**

Match the words to the definitions below.

- |                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| 1 bed & breakfast (b) | a A very big food shop.                 |
| 2 café ( )            | b A very small hotel.                   |
| 3 factory ( )         | c Mechanics work here.                  |
| 4 garage ( )          | d They make things here.                |
| 5 supermarket ( )     | e You can have hot or cold drinks here. |

## 2 COMMUNICATION

1 Write this dialogue in the correct order.

Hello. I'm Clare. Where are you from?

Hi! My name's Jack.

Really? What's your favorite hobby?

I'm from Scotland but I live in London. And you?

Well, I like sport. I play tennis.

I'm American. I come from New York.

I don't like tennis. I love football. It's brilliant.

- A: \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_

2 Now write a conversation between you and Clare in your notebook. Tell her about your favorite hobbies.

3 Match all the words that go together.

- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1 have      | the radio    |
| 2 go        | the answer   |
| 3 do        | cartoons     |
| 4 meet      | chess        |
| 5 listen to | a motorbike  |
| 6 watch     | breakfast    |
| 7 paint     | the shopping |
| 8 read      | camping      |
| 9 play      | magazines    |
| 10 ride     | people       |
| 11 guess    | pictures     |

Example: 1 have breakfast

- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| 2 _____ | 7 _____  |
| 3 _____ | 8 _____  |
| 4 _____ | 9 _____  |
| 5 _____ | 10 _____ |
| 6 _____ | 11 _____ |

## Skills Corner

### Listening – matching

(Recording SB page 13, Module 1, Warm-up, Exercise 2)

Listen to the four people and match them with the information below.

Write letters in the boxes: Nuria (N), László (L), Paula (P) or Kemal (K).

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> lives in the United States | 5 <input type="checkbox"/> plays a game with a ball                      |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> is Turkish                 | 6 <input type="checkbox"/> spends a lot of time in front of the computer |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> is fifteen                 | 7 <input type="checkbox"/> plays a musical instrument                    |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> is sixteen                 | 8 <input type="checkbox"/> comes from Hungary                            |

### 3 FOCUS ON WRITING

#### 1 Punctuation: capital letters

We use capital letters for names. Look at these examples:

William Shakespeare  
Rio de Janeiro  
Polish  
Manchester United  
Coronation Street  
Saturday

Put the capital letters in this email.

untitled

Send Now Send Later Link Signature Options

To: \_\_\_\_\_

Cc: \_\_\_\_\_

Subject: Your email

Attachments: none

Monaco Medium

Hi russell,

Thanks for your email from new zealand. You write that you like football. My team is arsenal and thierry henry is the best player in the world. He's french but he plays in england and he says that he loves london. I don't go to games but I watch my team on tv.

I play the guitar and my friends say I listen to eric clapton all the time. In november, he has a concert in istanbul. Do you like the new scissor sisters album? It's brilliant!

#### 2 Spelling

Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Be careful with +s, +ies, +es with the third person.

My penfriend, Dan (1) lives (lives) in New York. He (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Dean Park High School and he (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (play) in the school basketball team. He (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (like) rock music and he (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (collect) great guitar CDs.

In the summer holidays, he (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) his sister in California. She (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (teach) windsurfing at a sports club and Dan (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (help) her. Every morning he (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (get up) and (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (open) the club house. Dan (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (say) California's great but he (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (love) New York - it's his city.

#### 3 Linking with and

Put the words in the correct order. Start with the underlined word, like the example.

- cities/New York/are/Miami/and/  
American  
Miami and New York are American cities.
- like/Adam/Robert/football/and  
\_\_\_\_\_
- lives/in/Sue/and/Edinburgh/works  
\_\_\_\_\_
- gets up/Anita/early/has/shower/  
a/and/every/day  
\_\_\_\_\_
- he/in/Paul/likes computers/computer/  
and/uses/a/the office  
\_\_\_\_\_

#### 4 Guided writing

Use the words to complete the sentences.

or, the time, on, weekend

- She watches sport on television all \_\_\_\_\_ !
- I get up early from Monday to Friday but I sleep late every \_\_\_\_\_ .
- My mum does the shopping in the supermarket \_\_\_\_\_ Saturdays.
- I go camping once \_\_\_\_\_ twice a year.

# Review 1

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Complete the text with the verbs in the Present Simple.

Gary Moore is a police officer in Birmingham. He (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (love) his work. 'I (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (think) my job is brilliant,' he (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (say). 'I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (ride) around Birmingham on a motorbike. I (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (not work) in an office all day.' Gary (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (work) hard. He (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (get up) very early in the morning. He (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (not stay out) late.

Gary's girlfriend, Jade, (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (manage) a restaurant. 'I (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (like) my job. We (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (cook) great food here and we (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (have) excellent music. And I (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (not have) a boss. I am the boss!'

Gary and Jade (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (not go out) together a lot. Gary (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (not think) it's a problem. 'We (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (speak) on the phone a lot and we (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) at Jade's restaurant. I (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) there after work and (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (listen to) music and (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) Jade! She's a very good manager.'

### 2 Choose the correct verb to complete each sentence in the Present Simple.

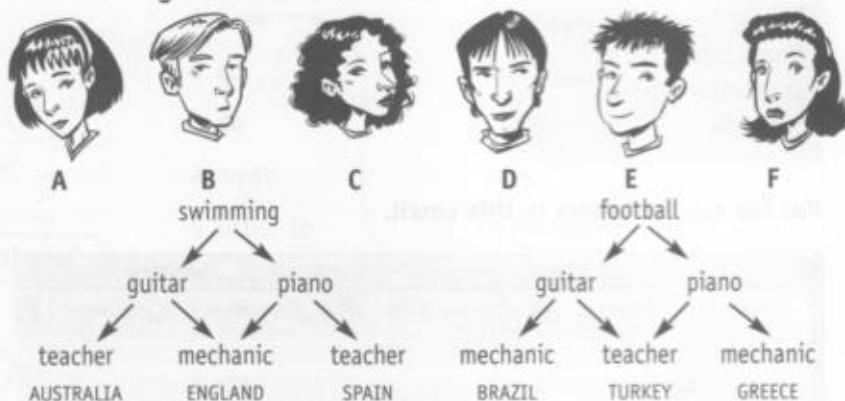
not use, live, not go, not cook, not like, not listen to, play, watch

- We \_\_\_\_\_ in a big house in Liverpool.
- My neighbour \_\_\_\_\_ my cat at all.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ a big English breakfast.
- Maria \_\_\_\_\_ tennis on Sundays.
- They \_\_\_\_\_ to school on Saturdays.
- Sandra \_\_\_\_\_ the radio but she \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of TV.
- My brother \_\_\_\_\_ a computer at work.

## VOCABULARY

### 3 Where are they from?

Use the diagram and read the clues.

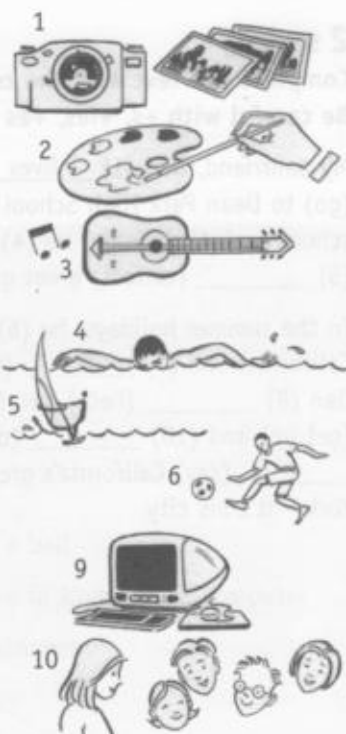


1 She's from England.

- A goes swimming at weekends and plays the piano. She's a mechanic.
- B watches football all the time and plays the piano. He isn't a teacher.
- C is a teacher. She swims every day and plays the piano.
- D is a mechanic. She plays football and loves listening to rock guitar.
- E teaches maths. He loves football and can play the piano.
- F teaches the guitar on Saturdays. She doesn't like football.

### 4 Complete the sentences. Use the picture cues to help you.

My hobby is (1) \_\_\_\_\_ but my girlfriend likes (2) \_\_\_\_\_. My brother plays (3) \_\_\_\_\_. He likes (4) \_\_\_\_\_ and (5) \_\_\_\_\_ but he doesn't like (6) \_\_\_\_\_. My sister has no hobbies but she often (7) \_\_\_\_\_ TV. She doesn't like (8) \_\_\_\_\_ so she usually does her homework on a (9) \_\_\_\_\_. She uses it to email her (10) \_\_\_\_\_.





# Key Words List

## MODULE 1 FRIENDS

### activities

go camping, cook, email, listen to music, play the guitar/piano, reading, shopping, swimming, take the dog for a walk, watch television, work, write

### hobbies

collect things, play computer games, painting, photography

### occupations

butcher, childminder, cook, doctor, factory worker, manager, mechanic, student, teacher, worker

### people

best friend, friend, husband, neighbour, pen friend

### places

café, city, countryside, factory, flat, garage, office, shop, supermarket, town

### sports

basketball, beach volleyball, diving, football, gymnastics, ice hockey, tennis, volleyball, windsurfing

### 1 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

age, all, and, at, but, doctor, every, false, guess, in, neighbour, news, on, once, ordinary, out, play, school, strict, tennis, time, use

- Not true: \_\_\_\_\_ information
- His name's Bob \_\_\_\_\_ he's sixteen.
- Mum goes to the supermarket \_\_\_\_\_ Saturdays.
- Try to \_\_\_\_\_ the meaning before you use your Mini-dictionary.
- A person who lives near to your home is your \_\_\_\_\_.
- You find out about things in the \_\_\_\_\_ on television.
- Coronation Street is about \_\_\_\_\_ people.
- Sue doesn't like football at \_\_\_\_\_.
- We don't stay \_\_\_\_\_ late on school days.
- She listens to the radio \_\_\_\_\_ day.
- I don't like maths \_\_\_\_\_ I love science.
- Celia doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ computer games.
- He says his \_\_\_\_\_ is fifteen in his email.
- I want to study medicine and be a \_\_\_\_\_.
- I don't play computer games all the \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ the information to guess where Roberto lives.
- We have a good basketball team in our \_\_\_\_\_.
- Maria Sharapova is a brilliant \_\_\_\_\_ player!
- I come from Spain but I live \_\_\_\_\_ Paris.
- My mum is \_\_\_\_\_ and I can't go out on school days.
- We go camping \_\_\_\_\_ or twice a week.
- My sister studies science \_\_\_\_\_ university.

### 2 Use words from the groups above and write information about:

- you
- a friend
- a character on television or in a film or book
- an imaginary friend

### 3 Sound the same ☒ or different ☒ ?

- |                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 true new <input type="checkbox"/>   | 4 now know <input type="checkbox"/>   |
| 2 goes does <input type="checkbox"/>  | 5 own town <input type="checkbox"/>   |
| 3 friend end <input type="checkbox"/> | 6 where hair <input type="checkbox"/> |

## Module Diary

### 1 Look at the lessons from Module 1 in your coursebook. Tick the boxes that are true for you.

	easy	OK	difficult
1 Neighbours			
2 Making friends			
3 Communication Workshop			

- Which is your favourite lesson? \_\_\_\_\_
- Is the Present Simple still difficult for you?  
Y N
- How often do you use the Mini-dictionary?  
Never Sometimes Often Very often



# 2 Personality

## Warm-up

1 Complete the sentences with two personality words for the people in the pictures.



1 She's \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.



2 I think he looks \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.



3 The man is \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.



4 The student looks \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.



5 The woman is \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.



6 The girl looks \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

## 4 GRAMMAR

### 1 ★ Present Simple: questions

Use the cues in brackets to write questions.

1 When (you/go) to the cinema?

When do you go to the cinema?

2 What (you/do) after school?

\_\_\_\_\_

3 Why (your brother/collect) photos of bears?

\_\_\_\_\_

4 (your parents/work) in the shop on Sunday?

\_\_\_\_\_

5 When (your best friend/phone) you?

\_\_\_\_\_

6 (your mother/use) a computer for her work?

\_\_\_\_\_

7 (people/call) you shy?

\_\_\_\_\_

### 2 ★ Present Simple: short answers

Complete the short answers.

1 Q: Do you like music?

A: Yes, I do.

2 Q: Does your brother get up early?

A: No, he doesn't.

3 Q: Do his friends live in New York?

A: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_

4 Q: Do you watch TV a lot?

A: No, \_\_\_\_\_

5 Q: Do I know your Uncle Martin?

A: No, \_\_\_\_\_

6 Q: Do Mark and Ben go to your school?

A: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_

7 Q: Does your dog like going out?

A: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_

## 3 ★ ★ Questions and short answers

Match the questions (1–8) and answers (a–h).  
Then complete the answers.

- 1 (b) Does your friend live in Rio de Janeiro?
- 2 ( ) Do your teachers like you?
- 3 ( ) Does your sister like discos?
- 4 ( ) Do you spell your name with a C?
- 5 ( ) Does your girlfriend write to you?
- 6 ( ) Do you like swimming?
- 7 ( ) Does your father work in a bank?
- 8 ( ) Do I take good photos?

- a No, \_\_\_\_\_. It's Katharine with a K.
- b No, he doesn't. He lives in São Paulo.
- c Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. ! Your photos are brilliant.
- d Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. I love sport.
- e No, \_\_\_\_\_. He owns a restaurant.
- f No, \_\_\_\_\_. She doesn't like dancing.
- g Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. I'm very hard-working!
- h Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. She writes emails every day.

## 4 ★ Adverbs of frequency

In your notebook, write about you, your family and your friends. Use one of the adverbs below in every sentence.

always, usually, often, sometimes, never

- 1 (do) the washing-up
- 2 (go) dancing on Saturdays
- 3 (listen to) music in bed
- 4 (stay out) late on Saturdays
- 5 (speak) to shy people at parties
- 6 (make) new friends at clubs
- 7 (get) angry with people

- 1 *I sometimes do the washing up.*
- 2 *Laura always goes dancing on Saturdays.*

## 5 ★ ★ Position of adverbs of frequency

Put the words in the correct order.

- 1 always/at/bored/is/Your/parties/brother  
Your brother is always bored at parties.
- 2 often/at/Andrea/parties/photos/takes  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 films/like/My/romantic/always/grandparents  
\_\_\_\_\_

- 4 am/I/Mondays/on/tired/usually/very  
\_\_\_\_\_

- 5 about/aunt/Argentina/her/in/Elly/often/speaks  
\_\_\_\_\_

- 6 are/for/late/never/school/You  
\_\_\_\_\_

- 7 dog/My/sometimes/TV/watches/on/football  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 6 Complete the questions with the correct verb.

watch, play, do, have, talk, go, ~~work~~

- 1 (you) Do you work hard at school?
- 2 (your dad) \_\_\_\_\_ the washing-up after dinner?
- 3 (your mum) \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast in bed on Sundays?
- 4 (your friends) \_\_\_\_\_ computer games at school?
- 5 (your parents) \_\_\_\_\_ dancing at the weekend?
- 6 (your dog) \_\_\_\_\_ TV with you in the evening?
- 7 (you) \_\_\_\_\_ to your friends on the phone?

Then answer the questions using an adverb of frequency in each answer.

- 1 I usually work hard at school.

- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_

## Word Corner

Complete the days of the week.

- 1 T \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ o \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ d \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ u \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ r \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ n \_\_\_\_\_

## 5 COMMUNICATION

**1** Read about Maria's preferences in the questionnaire below and complete the sentences 1-5 about her.

### New clubs after school

Do you want these clubs after school?

**Key:** XX = hate X = don't like  
? = don't mind ✓ = like ✓✓ = love

Teacher: Mr Mendes

Your name: Maria Kelly

Complete the boxes:

basketball	XX
chess	?
computers	✓✓
cooking	✓
dancing	?
swimming	X

- 1 basketball She hates basketball.
- 2 swimming \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 dancing \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 cooking \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 computers \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Your preferences

Fill the gaps. Write about you.

- A: What things \_\_\_\_\_ you like doing at the weekend?
- B: Well, I \_\_\_\_\_.
- A: What \_\_\_\_\_ you like?
- B: I \_\_\_\_\_ and I really \_\_\_\_\_.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ you work hard at school?
- B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ but on Friday evening I \_\_\_\_\_.
- A: How often do you \_\_\_\_\_ television?
- B: I \_\_\_\_\_ a week.

## 3 Write the opposites. Use your Mini-dictionary.

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1 bad _____   | 5 outgoing _____ |
| 2 lazy _____  | 6 friendly _____ |
| 3 quiet _____ | 7 nervous _____  |
| 4 sad _____   | 8 honest _____   |

## 4 Make adjectives from the nouns.

- |                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| 1 friend _____ | 5 romance _____    |
| 2 anger _____  | 6 difficulty _____ |
| 3 action _____ | 7 help _____       |
| 4 noise _____  | 8 practice _____   |

## Skills Corner

### Reading - matching

Read the texts about two star signs. Match the statements below with the correct sign. Write letters in the boxes: A (Aries) or G (Gemini).

- 1 ☐ like talking to people
- 2 ☐ are good bosses and managers
- 3 ☐ like reading
- 4 ☐ work a lot
- 5 ☐ are great friends
- 6 ☐ are funny
- 7 ☐ have many boyfriends/girlfriends in their life
- 8 ☐ aren't always very nice

### ARIES (March 21-April 19)



Aries is the first star sign. People born under this sign are good leaders. Their planet is Mars. They are ambitious and hard-working and often achieve a lot in their lives. They are very honest and loyal friends but they want their friends to be loyal, too. They are sometimes in a bad mood.

### GEMINI (May 21-June 20)



People born under Gemini are intelligent. They are often interested in philosophy and literature but they are also outgoing, very lively and active. They have a great sense of humour, love parties and a social life. They fall in love often and easily and can love more than one person at a time.



## 6 FOCUS ON WRITING

**1** We use capital letters at the start of sentences and a full stop at the end. Rewrite these sentences with capital letters and full stops.

*Roman from Slovakia is writing to his pen friend Erika in Hungary and sending her some photos.*

- 1 this is a photo of my mother, my father, my brother and my sister we live near Bratislava
- 2 this is all the family you can see my grandmother and grandfather and my uncle and two aunts



- 3 here you see magda she often goes to the gym she is active and friendly
- 4 here is my brother he likes films and rock music he is very lazy and never works hard



**2** Match the verb with the activity.

- |             |                |
|-------------|----------------|
| 1 do        | breakfast      |
| 2 have      | a photograph   |
| 3 go        | chess          |
| 4 learn     | the washing-up |
| 5 listen to | a postcard     |
| 6 play      | swimming       |
| 7 take      | music          |
| 8 watch     | English        |
| 9 write     | a film         |

**Example:** 1 do the washing-up

- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_

3 Linking with *when*

Write ten true sentences in your notebook, like the example.

When	I am at home, I am in class, I phone my friends,	I	always never sometimes often usually	listen to music. answer my teacher's questions. watch sport on TV. email my pen friends. talk about girls/boys. do the washing-up. talk for hours. get angry with my sister/brother. play computer games. practise speaking English.
------	--	---	--	---

# Review 2

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Present Simple: questions

Use the cues to write questions. Then match the questions to the answers.

1 (your sister/like) acting?

\_\_\_\_\_ ( )

2 How (you/help) at home?

\_\_\_\_\_ ( )

3 What sports (your sister/do)?

\_\_\_\_\_ ( )

4 Why (Emily/get) bored at parties?

\_\_\_\_\_ ( )

5 (you/go) to the gym on Saturdays?

\_\_\_\_\_ ( )

- a I do the washing-up.
- b She doesn't like dancing.
- c Yes, she does.
- d Sometimes.
- e Tennis and swimming.

### 2 Adverbs of frequency

Put the words in the correct order.

1 after/go/park/school/sometimes/the/to/We

\_\_\_\_\_

2 early/gets/My/never/on/Saturday/sister/up

\_\_\_\_\_

3 Angela/does/How/often/play/tennis/with/you?

\_\_\_\_\_

4 home/brother/is/helpful/My/never/at

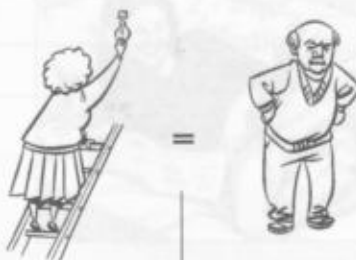
\_\_\_\_\_

5 don't/friends/I/my/emails/usually/to/write

\_\_\_\_\_

## VOCABULARY

### 3 Look at the diagram and fill the gaps.



=



=



YOU

- 1 My grandmother is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 My cousin looks \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 I think my brother is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 My aunt is \_\_\_\_\_.

- 5 My mum looks \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 I like my aunt's husband - he's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 My sister is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 My uncle is \_\_\_\_\_.

# Key Words List

## MODULE 2 PERSONALITY

### activities

acting, dancing, drawing, gardening,  
playing a game, playing music,  
painting, taking photos, singing,  
washing up, writing

### jobs

actor, director, footballer, nurse,  
politician, singer, writer

### places

bank, capital city, cinema, club,  
disco, home, school, zoo

### days

Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday,  
Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday

### family

aunt, brother, cousin, father,  
grandfather, grandmother, mother,  
sister, uncle

### mood

angry, bored, funny, happy, nervous,  
sad, serious, in a good/bad mood

### personality

active, friendly, hard-working,  
helpful, honest, kind, lazy, noisy,  
outgoing, practical, quiet, relaxed,  
romantic, shy, strict

### skills

be bad at something, be good at  
something

### preferences

dislike, hate, love, want; I like.../I  
don't like..., I don't mind...

### opposites

active – inactive, always – never,  
bad at – good at, bored – interested,  
difficult – easy,  
dislike – like, early – late, friendly –  
unfriendly, happy – sad, hard-  
working – lazy,  
helpful – unhelpful, honest –  
dishonest, kind – unkind, noisy –  
quiet, outgoing – shy, romantic –  
unromantic

### when?

always, never, often, sometimes,  
usually

### 1 Underline the word that doesn't match the group.

- |            |          |            |          |
|------------|----------|------------|----------|
| 1 sad      | honest   | singer     | angry    |
| 2 aunt     | person   | uncle      | sister   |
| 3 when     | often    | always     | never    |
| 4 nurse    | writer   | politician | painting |
| 5 team     | person   | family     | group    |
| 6 disco    | school   | cinema     | club     |
| 7 friendly | honest   | helpful    | lazy     |
| 8 hate     | not mind | like       | love     |

### 2 Put these adverbs in order from 'never' to 'always'.

never, often, once or twice, usually, sometimes, always

### 3 Write about you and your family using an adverb of frequency in every sentence.

- My father often goes (go) to the park.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) \_\_\_\_\_
- My \_\_\_\_\_ (play) \_\_\_\_\_
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (help) \_\_\_\_\_

- \_\_\_\_\_ (go) \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_ (write) \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_ (work) \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_ (get) \_\_\_\_\_

## Module Diary

### 1 Look at the lessons from Module 2 in your coursebook. Tick the boxes that are true for you.

	easy	OK	difficult
4 Your life			
5 Your interests			
6 Communication Workshop			

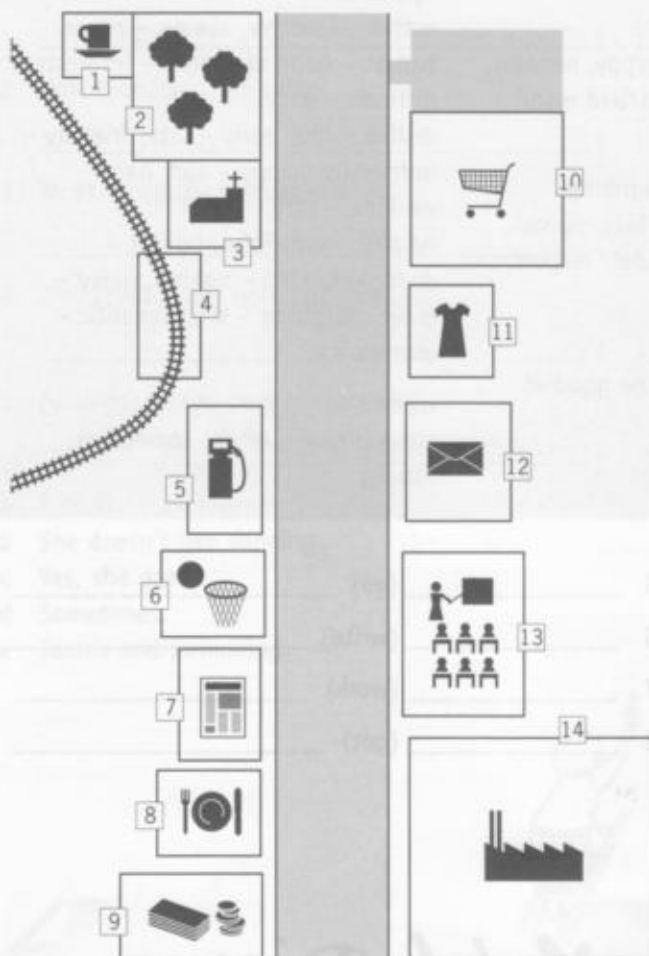
- Which is your favourite lesson? \_\_\_\_\_
- Is the Present Simple question form still difficult for you? Y N
- How often do you use the Mini-dictionary?  
Never Sometimes Often Very often



# 3 Around Town

## Warm-up

1 Look at the pictures and guess the places.



- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| 1 _____ | 8 _____  |
| 2 _____ | 9 _____  |
| 3 _____ | 10 _____ |
| 4 _____ | 11 _____ |
| 5 _____ | 12 _____ |
| 6 _____ | 13 _____ |
| 7 _____ | 14 _____ |

2 Look at the diagram. ONE sentence is true. Which one?

- The restaurant is next to the sports centre.
- The factory is next to the park.
- The post office is opposite the petrol station.
- The school is opposite the supermarket.

## 7 GRAMMAR

1 ★ **Affirmative: There is and There are**

Write sentences by putting the words in the correct order. Add capital letters and full stops.

- cinema/my/in/there's/street/a  
There's a cinema in my street.
- in/six/my/schools/town/are/there  
There are six schools in my town.
- in/two/this/there/railway/are/town/stations  
\_\_\_\_\_
- old/an/TV/in/is/there/my room  
\_\_\_\_\_
- shopping/there/two/are/new/sports shops/in/the/centre  
\_\_\_\_\_

2 ★ **Negative: There isn't or There aren't**

Circle the correct form.

- There (isn't/aren't) a cinema in my street.
- There (isn't/aren't) cars in the town centre.
- There (isn't/aren't) an E in station.
- There (isn't/aren't) computers at that café.
- There (isn't/aren't) a festival in July.
- There (isn't/aren't) good music at that club.

3 ★ **Is there or Are there**

Use the cues to write questions.

- drama club/at your school?  
Is there a drama club at your school?
- places to go dancing/in this town?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- ski centre/near your town?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- museum/near the castle?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- new film/at the cinema?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- beaches/near the city?  
\_\_\_\_\_



4 ★ ★ *Is there/Are there? + short answers*

Use the cues to write questions. Then complete the answers.

- 1 famous team/in your town?

Q: Is there a famous team in your town?

A: No, there isn't.

- 2 discos/in your town ?

Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_

- 3 swimming pool/at your school?

Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_

- 4 hotels/near the park?

Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: No, \_\_\_\_\_

- 5 a castle/in Richmond?

Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: No, \_\_\_\_\_

5 ★ ★ *There is/are and There isn't/aren't*

Correct these sentences.

- 1 There are six days in a week.

There aren't six days in a week. There are seven.

- 2 There are five ls in volleyball.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 3 There are ten players in a football team.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 4 There is one u in museum.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 5 There are nine letters in basketball.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 6 There are forty pages in this book.

\_\_\_\_\_

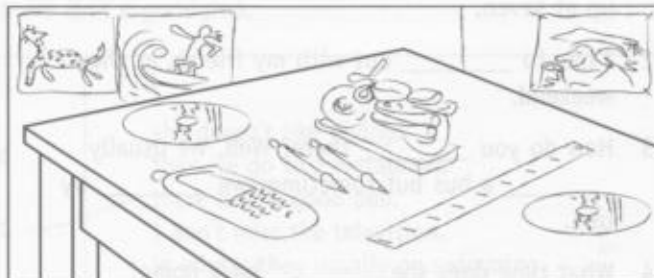
- 7 There is one picture on this page.

\_\_\_\_\_

6 ★ ★ *There is/are and There isn't/aren't*

Find five more differences in these pictures. In your notebook, write pairs of sentences like the examples.

Picture 1



Picture 2



- 1 There are two CDs in picture 1.  
There are four CDs in picture 2.
- 2 There's a motorbike in picture 1.  
There isn't a motorbike in picture 2.

## Word Corner

Choose the correct words to fill the gaps.

art gallery, night clubs, castle, department store, old buildings, palace, ski slope, swimming pool

- 1 Holyroodhouse is a \_\_\_\_\_. The royal family stays there when they're in Edinburgh.
- 2 That \_\_\_\_\_ is fantastic. You can get tennis rackets, books, TVs, clothes, computers and CDs there.
- 3 The hotel isn't near the beach but it's got a big \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 The night life is famous. There are some brilliant \_\_\_\_\_ with great music.
- 5 There are fantastic paintings in that \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 There are three very \_\_\_\_\_ in our town: the church, the \_\_\_\_\_ and the museum.
- 7 We sometimes go skiing in summer – on the artificial \_\_\_\_\_!

## 8 COMMUNICATION

### 1 Fill the gaps with the correct form of *get* or *go*.

- I \_\_\_\_\_ to bed at eleven o'clock and I \_\_\_\_\_ up at seven.
- I like to \_\_\_\_\_ out with my friends at the weekend.
- How do you \_\_\_\_\_ there? Well, we usually \_\_\_\_\_ a bus but sometimes we \_\_\_\_\_ by taxi.
- What time does she \_\_\_\_\_ back home?
- Do you \_\_\_\_\_ swimming on Fridays?

### 2 Use the correct words to fill the gaps.

get a bus, get lost, get a map, get there, get to the museum

- Excuse me. How do I \_\_\_\_\_?
- Well, it's easy to \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ and find Kensington High Street on it.
- You can't \_\_\_\_\_ with a good map.
- You can \_\_\_\_\_ or the tube.

### 3 Join two words to make a new word or phrase.

web	system
art	market
super	gallery
clothes	centre
night	store
shopping	shop
birthday	club
solar	site
department	party
football	club

### 4 What's the time?

Write the time on the watches.



1



3



4

2 4:40

5 2:55



7



6

8 11:45

## Skills Corner

### Speaking – roleplay

Work in pairs. You want to go out tonight with a friend. Read about your plans and preferences. Then agree with your partner about what you will do together and when and where you will meet.

#### Student A

Wait for your partner to start.

You can go out after 7 p.m. (you have a dancing lesson in the afternoon).

You want to go to a disco or to the cinema.

You don't like theatre and classical music.

You want to eat something before you go somewhere.

#### Student B

You start.

You want to go to a concert – they are playing Mozart at 6.30 p.m., tickets are free.

You don't like dancing.

You want to eat something before you go somewhere.

## 9 FOCUS ON WRITING

1 Linking with **and** or **but**

Match a sentence from A with a sentence from B. Use **and** or **but**. Write the sentences in your notebook.

**Example:** *There's a brilliant restaurant in the city centre but there isn't a good pub.*

A		B
<p>There's a brilliant restaurant in the city centre</p> <p>1 The town is interesting</p> <p>2 The village is small</p> <p>3 My brother and I play basketball on Monday</p> <p>4 My sister likes swimming</p> <p>5 When I'm camping, I miss my bed</p> <p>6 In summer, they play tennis</p>	<p>and</p> <p>but</p>	<p>she doesn't like diving.</p> <p>then we go to a restaurant.</p> <p>there isn't a good pub.</p> <p>I don't miss the television.</p> <p>in winter they usually go swimming.</p> <p>there are a lot of places to visit.</p> <p>there are three good places to eat.</p>

2 You are in London and you have a free day. Choose **ONE** place to visit and write why.

Use *I like/don't like ... , I'm interested in/not interested in ...*

### BBC Television Centre

A different place to visit! Watch people make a television programme. See celebrities when you walk around the building. Entrance is not cheap but this is a fantastic experience.  
Tube: White City.

### Royal Botanic Gardens

A large park with a famous collection of 40,000 beautiful plants. Brilliant places to walk and an excellent café. A good day out!  
Tube: Kew Gardens.

### Buckingham Palace

The London home of the British royal family is open from the end of July until the middle of September. Entrance is expensive but there are a lot of things to see and there is a good souvenir shop.  
Tube: Green Park.

### Somerset House

A magnificent building in the centre of London. It has excellent art galleries, a restaurant and café, and you can go ice-skating in the winter! Entrance is free.  
Tube: Covent Garden.

## 3 Write three entries for a brochure about places to visit in your capital city.

# Review 3

## GRAMMAR

**1** Complete the text with *there is/there isn't* and *there are/there aren't*.

I live in Glenelg, a small village on the sea, in Scotland.

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ a school with one teacher and (2)

\_\_\_\_\_ a church. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ one shop – it's

also the post office – and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ a hotel.

People meet there for a drink in the evenings.

(5) \_\_\_\_\_ a cinema or a night club in Glenelg and

(6) \_\_\_\_\_ clothes shops, but I don't mind. I don't

like night life and I don't like shopping. I love nature

and swimming and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ really great beaches

here. And in the summer (8) \_\_\_\_\_ great parties

on the beach. Of course (9) \_\_\_\_\_ a museum

and (10) \_\_\_\_\_ an art gallery but I paint and

take photos so (11) \_\_\_\_\_ my paintings and

pictures all over our house! You can't eat out in Glenelg

because (12) \_\_\_\_\_ restaurants and

(13) \_\_\_\_\_ cafés but I don't mind. My boyfriend

loves cooking and he's a great cook.

In the winter (14) \_\_\_\_\_ 50 people in the village,

but in the summer (15) \_\_\_\_\_ about 400 people.

People come for the beautiful countryside and beaches.

**2** Complete the dialogues with *there* and the correct form of the verb *to be*.

A: (1) \_\_\_\_\_ a radio in your car?

B: Yes, (2) \_\_\_\_\_. And (3) \_\_\_\_\_ a CD player.

A: Great! How many CDs (4) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B: (5) \_\_\_\_\_ about twenty CDs in this bag.

A: (6) \_\_\_\_\_ paintings by Salvador Dali in this gallery?

B: No, (7) \_\_\_\_\_. But (8) \_\_\_\_\_ paintings by Picasso.

A: Great! (9) \_\_\_\_\_ a reduction for students?

B: Yes, (10) \_\_\_\_\_.

A: (11) \_\_\_\_\_ discos and clubs in your town?

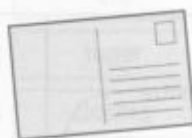
B: No, (12) \_\_\_\_\_. It's really boring.

A: (13) \_\_\_\_\_ a pub?

B: No, (14) \_\_\_\_\_ but (15) \_\_\_\_\_ a hotel with a bar.

## VOCABULARY

**3** Where do you go to buy these things?



1 a postcard



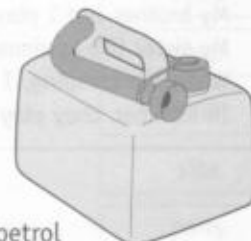
2 a cup of coffee



3 a train ticket



4 a magazine



5 petrol



6 eggs



7 a meal



8 a T-shirt

**4** Write a sentence using the adjective.

1 beautiful: \_\_\_\_\_

2 amazing: \_\_\_\_\_

3 great: \_\_\_\_\_

4 excellent: \_\_\_\_\_

5 magnificent: \_\_\_\_\_

6 lovely: \_\_\_\_\_

**5** Do these words have the same sound?

1 good mood

5 aunt aren't

2 great eat

6 home come

3 new view

7 clothes closed

4 try buy

8 practice practise

# Key Words List

## MODULE 3 AROUND TOWN

### time

in the morning/afternoon/evening,  
early/late, half past... , ... o'clock, a  
quarter past/to... , from... until...

### places

beach, capital, car park, castle, city,  
disco, park, petrol station, railway  
station, resort, sauna, school, ski  
centre, ski slope, square, street,  
swimming pool, village, the world,  
zone

### buildings

bank, café, cathedral, church,  
cinema, clothes shop, department  
store, gallery, hotel, museum,  
newsagent, night club, office, palace,  
post office, pub, restaurant, shop,  
shopping centre, sports centre,  
theatre

### adjectives

amazing, beautiful, brilliant,  
excellent, fantastic, great, incredible,  
lovely, magnificent, spectacular

### events

exhibition, football match, party

### prepositions

around, at, in, next to, on, opposite

### linking

and, but

**1** Write the letters in the correct order to make twelve words. Then find them in the word search.

locosh arteusntra spot fefoic  
chulbting artthee useum  
ehcab enamic lacape  
natitos bpu lyglara

l	y	o	b	r	s	c	h	o	o	l
g	a	l	l	e	r	y	u	z	l	t
a	r	s	o	s	h	o	r	v	u	h
s	p	o	s	t	o	f	f	i	c	e
t	a	a	c	a	f	f	o	x	i	a
a	l	n	m	u	s	e	u	m	n	t
t	a	a	a	r	c	t	n	a	e	r
i	c	b	e	a	c	h	y	p	m	e
o	e	i	l	n	y	e	o	u	a	k
n	i	g	h	t	c	l	u	b	o	r

**2** Write complete sentences for the newspaper headlines. Use *There ...*

1 **A LOT OF JOBS IN BIG HOTELS**

2 **INTERESTING EXHIBITION  
IN NATIONAL GALLERY**

3 **No Tickets for  
Football Match**

4 **Two Cinemas but no  
Theatre in City**

## Module Diary

**1** Look at the lessons from Module 3 in your coursebook. Tick the boxes that are true for you.

	easy	OK	difficult
7 Edinburgh			
8 London			
9 Communication Workshop			

- Which is your favourite lesson? \_\_\_\_\_
- Is the structure *There is/There are* still difficult for you? Y N
- How often do you use the Mini-dictionary?  
Never Sometimes Often Very often






# 4 Going Places

## Warm-up

### 1 Use the pictures to fill the gaps.


When it's cold, my best friend goes

(1) \_\_\_\_\_  and

(2) \_\_\_\_\_  but she doesn't

like (3) \_\_\_\_\_  in winter. She

says it's cold and often windy. My family

usually go (4) \_\_\_\_\_  in the

countryside in August. Sometimes we go to

the coast where we can all go

(5) \_\_\_\_\_ . There's a

canyon near our town and I want to go

(6) \_\_\_\_\_  but my parents

say it's dangerous. My brother loves

(7) \_\_\_\_\_  in the mountains

and my sister is lazy and likes

(8) \_\_\_\_\_  on the beach.

### 2 Complete the sentences – say when.

1 My birthday is \_\_\_\_\_.

2 The school holiday begins \_\_\_\_\_.

3 New Year's Day is \_\_\_\_\_.

4 The summer months are \_\_\_\_\_.

5 The cold time of year is from \_\_\_\_\_  
until \_\_\_\_\_.

6 I always email my pen friend \_\_\_\_\_.

### 3 Write about things you can do in these places.

- 1 at the beach
- 2 in a club
- 3 in the mountains in winter
- 4 in the mountains in July
- 5 on holiday in a city

## 10 GRAMMAR

### 1 ★ Whose

Write questions with *Whose* for the answers given.

1 Whose CD is it?

It's David's CD.

2 \_\_\_\_\_

They're Maria's letters.

3 \_\_\_\_\_

I've got Anna's backpack.

4 \_\_\_\_\_

He likes Marek's walking boots.

5 \_\_\_\_\_

I want Sandra's guide book.

6 \_\_\_\_\_

He's got Carla's binoculars.

### 2 ★ Apostrophe: 's

Circle the correct words.

- 1 Adams/(Adam's) favourite (sports)/sport's are tennis and swimming.
- 2 I've got three invitations/invitation's to parties/party's next week.
- 3 Whose shoes/shoe's are those?
- 4 Emmas/Emma's brother always takes binoculars/binocular's on his holidays/holiday's.
- 5 These theatre tickets/ticket's are your sisters/sister's.
- 6 My parents/parent's don't take photos/photo's of animals/animal's.
- 7 My friends/friend's parents/parent's are doctors/doctor's.
- 8 Can I see your pictures/picture's of your grandfathers/grandfather's party.

### 3 ★ Apostrophe: 's

Add apostrophes where necessary.

- 1 Your friends have got my fathers fishing rod.
- 2 Which pop stars do you like?
- 3 My father owns a clothes factory.
- 4 Whose tickets have you got?
- 5 Are these your sisters Harry Potter books?
- 6 My familys favourite activities are singing and dancing.
- 7 Look at those peoples clothes.
- 8 My grandmothers dogs name is Misty.
- 9 Do you go walking with your friends at weekends?
- 10 Don't take the childrens sweets.

#### 4 ★ ★ Apostrophe: 's

Put the words in the correct order. Add 's to the correct word.

- 1 got/Have/my brother/Kylie Minogue CD?/you  
Have you got my brother's Kylie Minogue CD?
- 2 at/Adam/having/house./I /like/lunch  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 collection/DVDs/fantastic./is/of/sister/Your  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 is/men/please?/the/toilet/Where  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 don't/Josie/Please/notebook./use  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 actor/don't/I/know/name./the  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 at/beautiful photos/of/Lisa/Look/Brazil.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 8 train/Fran/is/ticket?/Where  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 9 cat/My grandmother/likes/listening/music./to  
\_\_\_\_\_

#### 5 ★ Apostrophe: s'

Change the sentences so they end with the underlined words. Add the apostrophe to the correct word, like the example.

- 1 My parents have got a red car.  
My parents' car is red.
- 2 His friends have got a beautiful sailing boat.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 My uncles have got a restaurant in Budapest.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Your sisters have got very nice friends.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The actors have got interesting stories about the theatre.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 My grandparents have got a noisy dog.  
\_\_\_\_\_

#### 6 ★ ★ Apostrophe: 's or s'

Underline the correct form of the word.

- 1 My two (sister's/sisters') names are Vicki and Serena.
- 2 My aunt teaches history at a (girl's/girls') school.
- 3 My father writes (children's/childrens') stories.
- 4 (Chris's/Chris') brother collects model cars.
- 5 I love watching (men's/mens') tennis on TV.
- 6 Have you got (Tess's/Tess') telephone number?
- 7 The (Crosby's/Crosbys') house has got a big pond.
- 8 I don't like those (people's/peoples') dog.

#### 7 ★ ★ Apostrophe: 's or s'

Complete the sentences with a suitable noun or name + 's or s'.

- 1 Where is Maria's backpack?
- 2 Where is your sister's backpack?
- 3 Where is your parents' car?
- 4 I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ brother.
- 5 What colour are your \_\_\_\_\_ eyes?
- 6 My American \_\_\_\_\_ name is Scott.
- 7 The girls' team is very good but the \_\_\_\_\_ team isn't very good this year.

## Word Corner

Match the words to the clues.

backpack, binoculars, fishing rod, guide book, helmet, walking boots, knife, ~~maps~~, riding boots

- 1 You can see roads, rivers, towns and countries on them. maps
- 2 You carry things in it. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 You read it to get information about a country or town. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 You use it to catch fish. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 You use them to look at birds, for example. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 You wear it on your head for riding or cycling. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 You wear them when you go riding. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 You wear them when you go walking. \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 You use it to cut food and other things. \_\_\_\_\_

## 11 COMMUNICATION

### 1 Choose the correct word.

'Where are the Scilly Islands?'

'They are near the coast of Cornwall in southwest England.'

'What's (1) *the/a* weather like?'

'Well, it is often very warm. Many plants grow (2) *there/their* that cannot grow in other parts of Britain. Many days are (3) *sunny/sunshine* and sometimes the temperature can be over thirty (4) *degree/degrees*.'

'Wow! That's really (5) *hot/changeable* for England.'

'Yes, the islands don't have a winter and (6) *it/they* never snows.'



### 2 Complete the sentences with the adjective form of the nouns in brackets.

- 1 I hate cycling when it's \_\_\_\_\_. (rain)
- 2 The weather's usually \_\_\_\_\_ in England. (change)
- 3 You can meet \_\_\_\_\_ people at Television Centre. (fame)
- 4 We're usually very \_\_\_\_\_ after a long trek. (hunger)
- 5 I don't sunbathe when it's \_\_\_\_\_! (cloud)
- 6 This pen is \_\_\_\_\_ – can I use yours? (break)

### 3 Put the words in the correct column.

cold, hot, July, today, April, warm, school holidays, New Year's Day, your birthday, start of the school year, icy, brown leaves

summer	autumn	winter	spring

## Skills Corner

### Reading – true/false

Read the advertisement about a trek to Peru. Are the sentences below true or false?

- 1 ☐ You have a chance to see the Amazon River.
- 2 ☐ You don't go camping during this trip.
- 3 ☐ You don't need a map.
- 4 ☐ You can do some sailing on the lake.
- 5 ☐ You can see some folk dancing.
- 6 ☐ You don't have to speak Spanish.
- 7 ☐ You book your own flights.
- 8 ☐ You pay extra for the food.

### DISCOVER THE JUNGLE

**Enjoy a 3-day stay in the rain forests of Peru.**

We organise relaxed treks through the jungle in the area of Sandoval Lake. You can observe huge trees and unusual animals, like exotic birds and butterflies, caimans and monkeys. You can also go in a canoe and fish for piranhas, hike along the banks of Sandoval Lake and enjoy a beautiful sunset. We offer accommodation in comfortable modern bungalows with a nice view of the lake. You can try local food and listen to Peruvian music.

Our experienced guides can answer any questions about the tropical rain forests. They speak English, French and German, so don't worry if you don't speak Spanish.

**Price:** \$200 (includes accommodation, transfers, guides and all meals; flight costs not included)

## 12 FOCUS ON WRITING

1 Write the letter again in your notebook with apostrophes. There are seven apostrophes.

Lake Balaton in Hungary



My brothers birthday is on the 23<sup>rd</sup> of July. Its the first day of the school summer holidays. We usually go to Balaton Fured in Hungary on that day. Theres a big lake there, Lake Balaton. Pauls fifteen this year - thats my brother - and we want to have a big party for him. My parents friends go to Balaton Fured every year, too. We often go swimming with them. They dont have bikes so they sometimes ride ours. We always have a lot of fun.

2 Write these sentences again. Add *also* or *too*.

- 1 I have a brochure but I need a map.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I have riding boots and I have a helmet.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 That's her pen but is that dictionary hers?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 It's always warm in summer. It's usually dry.  
\_\_\_\_\_

3 Write an email to a friend. Ask to borrow things you need for a holiday in Britain.

## Language Problem Solving 1

## A/AN/THE

1 Write *a*, *an*, *the* or nothing in the gaps.

Anna Benedek is (1) a new student at (2) \_\_\_\_\_ International School in London. Anna is (3) \_\_\_\_\_ outgoing person. She says, 'I like making (4) \_\_\_\_\_ new friends and I go out (5) \_\_\_\_\_ lot.'

Anna is usually (6) \_\_\_\_\_ active person. 'I like sport and I play tennis three times (7) \_\_\_\_\_ week,' she says. 'But on Saturdays, I'm lazy! I get up late and have (8) \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast at my favourite café. (9) \_\_\_\_\_ café has got computers and you can email your friends. On Saturday evening, I always go to (10) \_\_\_\_\_ club with my friend Claudia. We usually go to *Subway*. It's (11) \_\_\_\_\_ interesting place and it has fantastic music. I never go to (12) \_\_\_\_\_ bed early on Saturdays!'

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

2 Underline the correct word.

- 1 'Are these my tickets?'  
'No, (yours/mine) are on the table.'
- 2 'Is this Dave's football shirt?'  
'No, (his/mine) is in his sports bag.'
- 3 'Have you got Linda's passport?'  
'No, (yours/hers) is at the hotel.'
- 4 'Is this your jacket or is it Sue's?'  
'It's (mine/hers). Look. It's got my name in it.'
- 5 'Is this green car your parents'?'  
'No, (yours/theirs) is blue.'
- 6 'Joey, is this our train?'  
'No, (his/ours) is at quarter past three.'
- 7 'I think that's my place.'  
'I don't think it's (yours/hers). Can I see your ticket, please?'
- 8 'Is this Sandra's T-shirt?'  
'No, (hers/ours) has got a big blue S on it.'
- 9 'Have you got Steve's mobile phone?'  
'No, he always takes (mine/his) with him to work.'

## IT'S/ITS

3 Put apostrophes where necessary.

- 1 Its a beautiful state with fantastic flora and fauna.
- 2 Its got mountains, deserts and forests.
- 3 Its forests are full of eagles and other birds.
- 4 Its a good idea to visit in the spring.
- 5 In the spring, its sunny and sometimes rainy.
- 6 People says its got fantastic camp sites.



# Review 4

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Complete the sentences with the correct words.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ a big castle in the centre.  
a It's got    b Its got    c It is got
- 2 The \_\_\_\_\_ videos are on that shelf.  
a childrens    b children's    c childrens'
- 3 This computer is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a mine    b my    c mine's
- 4 What is \_\_\_\_\_ address of your college?  
a a    b an    c the
- 5 My father teaches at a \_\_\_\_\_ school in Prague.  
a boy's    b boys'    c boys
- 6 My \_\_\_\_\_ husband likes going on treks.  
a friends    b friend's    c friends'
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ T-shirt is on the bed.  
a He's    b His    c It's
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ got statues on the roof.  
a It is    b It has    c There's
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ easy to remember my phone number.  
a Is    b Its    c It's
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ chocolate is that?  
a Who's    b Who    c Whose
- 11 We live in \_\_\_\_\_ old flat in Edinburgh.  
a the    b a    c an
- 12 What are your two \_\_\_\_\_ names?  
a sisters'    b sister's    c sisters

### 2 Match sentences 1 to 5 to the responses (a-e).

Then underline the correct word in each response.

- 1 ( ) Our swimming lesson is at half past two.
  - 2 ( ) How old are you?
  - 3 ( ) Our school holidays start next week.
  - 4 ( ) When's your birthday?
  - 5 ( ) Why have you got Angie's hat?
- a Fifteen but (my/mine) birthday is next week.  
b Really? (Our/Ours) is at three o'clock.  
c In November. When's (your/yours)?  
d It isn't (her/hers). It's (my/mine).  
e (Our/Ours) start on the 12th of July.

## VOCABULARY

### 3 Use the correct possessive pronoun



- 'Ann thinks the ball is (1) \_\_\_\_\_.'
- 'Is the ball (2) \_\_\_\_\_, Ann?'
- 'Yes, it's (3) \_\_\_\_\_,' said Ann.
- 'It isn't (4) \_\_\_\_\_. Fred owns it. It's (5) \_\_\_\_\_.'
- 'No, the ball belongs to my brothers. It's (6) \_\_\_\_\_.'
- 'Yes, it's (7) \_\_\_\_\_' said Miguel and Paulo.

### 4 Spelling: underline the silent letters.

- |          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| 1 writer | 6 know    |
| 2 autumn | 7 half    |
| 3 listen | 8 science |
| 4 honest | 9 when    |
| 5 guess  | 10 climb  |

### 5 Match the first part with the correct second part. The first is an example.

- |              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1 tennis     | boots       |
| 2 travel     | weather     |
| 3 desert     | floor       |
| 4 bald       | environment |
| 5 changeable | abroad      |
| 6 fishing    | eagle       |
| 7 natural    | racket      |
| 8 outdoor    | area        |
| 9 walking    | rod         |
| 10 wooden    | activities  |



## Use of English

## 1 Sentence transformation

Using the words in brackets, write each sentence again so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- There are two armchairs and a sofa in my room. (has got)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- I like the actor Orlando Bloom very much. (favourite)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Kirsten's best friend is German. (from)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- On Friday, the museum is open until 10 p.m. (closes)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Jenny's got a new boat so people think she's a millionaire. (because)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- These dictionaries belong to my father. (are)  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Cloze

Read the text below and fill in the blanks with an appropriate word. Use one word for each blank.

**Interesting people who live in my town**

My town is not very big or special (1) \_\_\_\_\_ many fascinating people live there. Just round the corner there is a house which belongs to Mrs Harris. She's almost 80 years (2) \_\_\_\_\_. She lives all alone but she is not bored at home. There (3) \_\_\_\_\_ always many visitors who come to her house to talk to her. (4) \_\_\_\_\_ Saturdays, she takes her fishing (5) \_\_\_\_\_ and goes to the river to fish!

My next door neighbour is Rob Birkin. He likes fishing, (6) \_\_\_\_\_, but he really loves cooking. He is very good at preparing delicious meals and he's famous (7) \_\_\_\_\_ his spaghetti Bolognese.

My friends and I also have many interests; for example, Stella (8) \_\_\_\_\_ photos and Ray goes climbing once (9) \_\_\_\_\_ month. But Mrs Harris also climbs the mountains and she is 80! Incredible, isn't (10) \_\_\_\_\_?

## 3 Verb transformation

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- Sandra usually \_\_\_\_\_ (not travel) anywhere at the weekends but sometimes her friend John \_\_\_\_\_ (take) her to the seaside in his car.
- Why \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) so fast? You know it \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) good for your health.
- Ben says he \_\_\_\_\_ (love) art but there \_\_\_\_\_ (be) only two good pictures in his house.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (not like) looking after young children, especially when they \_\_\_\_\_ (cry).
- Barry \_\_\_\_\_ (miss) his two good friends because they both \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in Australia now.
- Ann \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV every night. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not watch) TV at all.

## 4 Word formation

Complete the sentences. Use the words in CAPITALS to form a verb, noun or adjective that fits the gap.

- My friend Alice is a \_\_\_\_\_ (FRIEND) and honest person.
- Marco \_\_\_\_\_ (OWNER) a new café in the centre of town.
- He wants some \_\_\_\_\_ (INFORM) about the London Eye.
- The weather is \_\_\_\_\_ (WIND) and cloudy.
- We have got three \_\_\_\_\_ (EXAMINE) tomorrow.
- Her boyfriend is very \_\_\_\_\_ (ROMANCE).
- It often \_\_\_\_\_ (RAIN) in Scotland in the winter.
- The Globe Theatre is an amazing \_\_\_\_\_ (BUILD).

## Speaking

### Photo description

Describe the picture. Answer the following questions:

- 1 Are these people good friends? Why do you think so?
- 2 What do you like doing together with your best friend?



### TIP

Remember! In this type of exercise you are asked to:

- describe a picture (for example, who are the people in the picture; what are they doing; where are they?);
- give your opinion about what is happening in the picture;
- relate the picture to your own life.

### USEFUL PHRASES

- In the picture ...; there is/are ...; in the middle of the picture ...; in the background/in the foreground ...; on the left/on the right ...
- I think they are/aren't good friends because ...
- With my best friend, we always/never/often/usually ...; I love/like ...ing with her/him because ...

## Reading

1 Read the text on the right. Then decide if the sentences (1–7) at the top of page 33 are true or false.

### TIP

The following are helpful tips when doing true/false exercises.

- Read each sentence very carefully and find the part of the text which relates to each sentence.
- Check for details: sometimes one short phrase or word makes the whole sentence false.
- Check if the sentence is affirmative or negative – this can help you figure out the answer.
- Don't panic if you don't understand a word or a phrase in the text or in the exercise. Try to guess it from the context or leave it and try to do the exercise without it.
- If you are not sure which answer to choose, guess. Don't leave any of the questions unanswered.

Many people like going on holiday to places like Italy or Spain, but Martha prefers to stay at home. She lives with her parents and two little brothers in Lyme Regis in England. Lyme Regis is a town in Dorset in the southwest of England. Dorset is a special place in England because it is never very cold. In winter it is rainy and often quite windy, but it is almost never below zero. Spring, summer and autumn can be very nice: it doesn't rain very often and it is sunny most of the time. There are even some palm trees in nearby Devon!

Martha likes Lyme Regis because it is a beautiful place at the seaside. Young people have many things to do there: in summer, they can go swimming, surfing or even diving, and in winter they can play sports in clubs. The town is not very big but it has got a special atmosphere. It is a historic place with some monuments from Roman times. It is also famous because some authors write about it in their novels, and there are also films about it.

Lyme Regis is always full of tourists from England and abroad. Martha loves spending her holidays there but she doesn't relax all the time. In summer, when there are many visitors, she works as a waitress in a seaside restaurant. In this way she can watch her favourite scenery all the time.

- 1 ☐ Martha doesn't want to spend her holidays in Italy.
- 2 ☐ Martha lives in a place in central England.
- 3 ☐ In Dorset all seasons of the year are the same.
- 4 ☐ Lyme Regis is a place with a lot of attractions for young people.
- 5 ☐ Tourists from abroad come to Lyme Regis in summer only.
- 6 ☐ Martha's holidays are often quite busy.
- 7 ☐ Martha loves looking at the sea.

**2** Read the text on the right. Then choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

### Tip

The following are useful tips when doing multiple choice reading exercises.

- Read the sentences before you read the text. This will help you to find the parts of the text which the sentences refer to.
- Decide where in the text you should look for the answers.
- Read all the options very carefully and check how they relate to the information in the relevant part of the text.
- Eliminate two answers which are definitely wrong and choose between the two that are left.
- If you are not sure which answer to choose, guess. Don't leave any of the questions unanswered.

**There are many TV shows about young people and their problems. We ask two youngsters, Rita and Meg, about their favourite series and its main character.**

**Rita:** I think that my favourite series at the moment is *Get Real*. It is about an American family with two sons and a daughter. The daughter's name is Megan. I like her character very much. She is 17 years old. She has got long, dark brown hair and dark brown eyes. She is quite hard-working but she doesn't have plans to study at university. She hasn't got many friends because she is quite shy. I like the series because it is about real problems in the life of young people. At first it looks like a comedy but then it changes into a real drama.

**Meg:** I must say I prefer comedy to drama. My favourite TV series is *Gilmore Girls*. There are two main characters, a single mother and her daughter, a 17-year-old girl called Rory. She is not very tall and has got long brown hair. Rory is a very good student and an ambitious person. She always reads books and works very hard. She hasn't got many friends because she is now in a new school. Rory is quiet and not very outgoing, but her mother is a real rebel. I sometimes think that Rory is a kind of parent and her mother is a little girl!

- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| <p>1 Rita likes the TV series about</p> <p>A two American teenagers.</p> <p>B a family with small children.</p> <p>C a girl and her family.</p> <p>D Megan and her friends.</p>  | <p>3 One special thing about <i>Get Real</i> is that</p> <p>A it shows happy people.</p> <p>B it is only about young people.</p> <p>C it is very optimistic.</p> <p>D it's not the same all the time.</p>                           | <p>5 Which sentence about Rory is true?</p> <p>A She's very tall.</p> <p>B She loves reading.</p> <p>C She's got a lot of friends.</p> <p>D She hates school.</p>        |
| <p>2 Which sentence about Megan is NOT true?</p> <p>A She doesn't like to work very hard.</p> <p>B She doesn't want to go to university.</p> <p>C There are not many friends in her life.</p> <p>D She isn't a very outgoing person.</p> | <p>4 <i>Gilmore Girls</i> is similar to <i>Get Real</i> because</p> <p>A it is about serious problems.</p> <p>B it is about a teenage girl.</p> <p>C there are two main characters.</p> <p>D there is one parent in the family.</p> | <p>6 Rory and her mother</p> <p>A prefer to be alone.</p> <p>B are not very romantic.</p> <p>C are different kinds of people.</p> <p>D love and hate similar things.</p> |

## Listening

(Recording SB page 33, Module 4, Warm-up, Exercise 3)

**Listen to four people talking about their favourite ways of spending holidays. Match the interests (A-E) to the people (1-4) in the table. There is one extra interest. You will hear the recording twice.**

Which person is interested in:

- A going to different places in Europe?
- B the past?
- C sightseeing in Mexico?
- D going to the seaside in Australia?
- E the mountains?

1 Tom	2 Mary	3 Jack	4 Sue

## TIP

The following are useful tips when doing matching listening exercises.

- Before you listen, read the instructions carefully and make sure you know what you are being asked to do. For example, in this matching exercise, there are four people and five interests. One of the interests is extra and is not an answer.
- Read the interests before you listen. When you listen for the first time, you will hear more information than you need to answer the questions. Try to concentrate on the sentence that contains the information you need.
- When you listen for the first time, mark the answers which you think are correct. Remember! It is possible that people can talk about more than one thing listed in the exercise. Make sure you don't choose answers with the opposite meaning.
- When you listen for the second time, make sure you matched the correct answers. If you don't know the answer, guess. Don't leave any of the questions unanswered.

## Writing

### 1 Short text

You have an English friend staying at your house. He/she isn't home at the moment. You are planning to go to the cinema with him/her in the evening and then to visit some friends. Write a short note in which you:

- Invite him/her to the cinema.
- Describe the film.
- Mention the visit to your friends after the cinema.
- Write where and when you can meet up.

## TIP

- Remember, a note is a short text.
- Read the model note on page 32 of the Students' Book and use this to help you write your note.
- Remember to include all the information in the instructions.

## USEFUL PHRASES

- Hi, Jack; Would you like to ...?
- It is a/an ... film with ...; It is on at ... (hour).
- How about going to ...?; Later, we could ...
- Let's meet at ... in/at ...

### 2 Long text

You are writing for the first time to a penfriend in England or the USA. The penfriend is your age. Write a letter in which you:

- Write how old you are and which school you go to.
- Describe your family.
- Write about your interests.
- Give the topics you would like to exchange letters about in the future.

## TIP

- A letter is a longer text which you can write in a formal or informal style. It depends on the person you are writing to. When you are writing to a person of your age, use an informal style.
- Read the model letter on page 24 of the Students' Book and use this to help you write your letter.
- Remember to use no more than 120-150 words.

## USEFUL PHRASES

- Hi! I am ... years old; I go to .../I'm a student at ...
- My mother is ...; my father works at ...; my sister/brother ...
- I love ...ing; I'm a ...; My favourite activity/actor/band is ...
- I'd like to write about ... Write to me!



# Key Words List

## MODULE 4 GOING PLACES

### things to do

(go) backpacking, birdwatching, camping, climbing, diving, fishing, horse riding, sailing, sightseeing, skating, skiing, sunbathing, surfing, trekking, walking; play golf

### equipment

backpack, bike, binoculars, camera, fishing rod, golf club, guide book, helmet, knife, map, notebook, pen, racket, riding boots, ruler, surfboard, walking boots

### places

airport, classroom, cottage, countryside, desert, forest, garden, kitchen, library, mountain, pet shop

### months

January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December

### seasons

spring, summer, autumn, winter

### weather

Celsius, changeable, cloud, cloudy, cold, degree, dry, hot, icy, rain, rainy, snow, snowy, sun, sunny, temperature, warm, wet, wind, windy, zero

### order

first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth ... today, tomorrow

### animals

bird, budgie, cat, dog, eagle, elephant, horse, llama, species, spider

### listening and viewing

cassette, CD, CD player, mobile phone, stereo, television, video

### fruit

apple, banana, orange

### building

floor, roof, wall

### possessive pronouns

mine, yours, hers, his, ours, theirs

### linking

also, too

### 1 Fill the gaps with a word from the box.

take, in, excuse, round, favour, sorry, on, borrow

- Can I ask you a \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- I'm \_\_\_\_\_ but I never get up early at weekends.
- I stay in bed reading \_\_\_\_\_ Sundays.
- \_\_\_\_\_ me, can you tell me the time?
- I want to \_\_\_\_\_ pictures of the birds in the park.
- Does your mobile phone work \_\_\_\_\_ the mountains?
- Can you come \_\_\_\_\_ to my house this evening?
- Can I \_\_\_\_\_ your knife because I haven't got one?

## Module Diary

1 Look at the lessons from Module 4 in your coursebook. Tick the boxes that are true for you.

	easy	OK	difficult
10 In the countryside			
11 Llama trekking			
12 Communication Workshop			

- Which is your favourite lesson? \_\_\_\_\_
- Is the possessive 's still difficult for you?  
Y N
- How often do you use the Mini-dictionary?  
Never Sometimes Often Very often





# 5 History

## Warm-up

**1 Underline the correct verb.**  
Use the Mini-dictionary to help you.

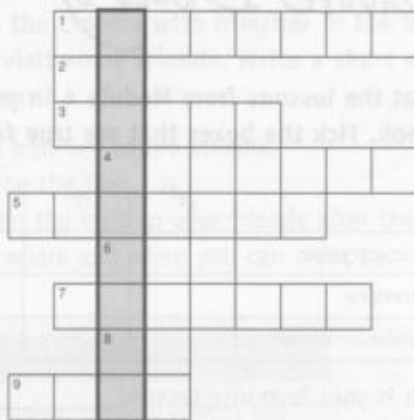


- In 1834 Charles Babbage *builds/invents/suggests* the idea of building a computer to solve problems.
- Konrad Zuse *builds/invents/suggests* the first computer in Germany a hundred years later.
- In Manchester University, Fred Williams leads a team that *builds/invents/suggests* the world's first commercial computer in 1951.

**2 Make nouns from these verbs. Use the nouns in your own sentences.**

discover, explore, invent, suggest

**3 Complete the clues and find the word in the shaded box.**



- When did Copernicus \_\_\_\_ the solar system?
- I think it was \_\_\_\_ 1543.
- The end of the Berlin Wall was a major \_\_\_\_.
- Why do people want to \_\_\_\_ space?
- In which \_\_\_\_ were computers developed?
- Zuse invented the first computer in \_\_\_\_ twentieth century.
- What do you think was an important event in \_\_\_\_?
- What happened \_\_\_\_ 11 September, 2001?
- When did men first \_\_\_\_ on the moon?

## 13 GRAMMAR

**1 ★ Past Simple affirmative: regular verbs**  
How do these verbs end in the Past Simple?

use, play, study, start, like, help, carry, watch, travel, live, stop

Write your answers in the correct column:

+ d	+ ed	y + ed	y + ied	+ led/ped
<u>used</u>				

**2 ★ Past Simple**

Write these regular verbs in the Past Simple.



The famous Russian dancer, Vaslav Nijinsky, (1) lived (live) from 1890 to 1950. As a small child, he (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) dancing from his father. At the Nijinsky's home, Vaslav (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (dance) with his

brother and his little sister. At the age of nine, he (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (move) to St Petersburg and (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (start) dance lessons at the Imperial School of Dancing. He (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (study) dancing for eight years with Russia's top ballet teachers. Between 1909 and 1917, he (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) in Europe, the United States and South America. He (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (marry) Romola in Buenos Aires, Argentina in 1913. Between 1919 and 1950 he (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in Switzerland, France and England. He (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (die) in London in 1950.

## 3 ★ ★ Past Simple

Match parts (1–10) of the sentences with the endings (a–j). Then, in your notebooks, write the complete sentence with the verb in the Past Simple.

- |   |                        |                              |
|---|------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 (j) The Russian Revolution (start)          | a on the moon in 1969. | g the Eiffel Tower.          |
| 2 ( ) Gustave Eiffel (design)                 | b New York.            | h three times.               |
| 3 ( ) Alexander Fleming (discover)            | c Latin at school.     | i to China in the thirteenth |
| 4 ( ) Vincent Van Gogh (paint)                | d the radio.           | century.                     |
| 5 ( ) Marilyn Monroe (marry)                  | e penicillin.          | j in 1917.                   |
| 6 ( ) Men first (walk)                        | f Sunflowers.          |                              |
| 7 ( ) Marconi (invent)                        |                        |                              |
| 8 ( ) Marco Polo (travel)                     |                        |                              |
| 9 ( ) Leonardo da Vinci (study)               |                        |                              |
| 10 ( ) In September 2001, terrorists (attack) |                        |                              |

1 The Russian Revolution started in 1917.

## 4 ★ Past Simple: to be

Circle the correct form.

- Cleopatra (was/were) an Egyptian queen.
- Louis XIV and Louis XV (was/were) kings of France.
- The Beatles (was/were) pop musicians from Liverpool.
- Leonardo da Vinci and Sandro Botticelli (was/were) Italian Renaissance artists.
- Albert Einstein (was/were) a physicist.

## 5 ★ Past Simple affirmative: irregular verbs

Complete the sentences with the Past Simple of the verbs.

- Last Sunday I had (have) breakfast in bed.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (read) eight books in my last summer holidays.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ (see) beautiful paintings by Picasso in the museum.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (take) my grandmother sailing last week.
- Jim \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a new computer last week.
- Jill \_\_\_\_\_ (write) seven letters on Monday.
- Mrs Santoni \_\_\_\_\_ (give) us a lot of homework on Tuesday.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (make) dinner for the family last Saturday.
- My friend \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) Christina Aguilera after the concert last Saturday.

## 6 ★ ★ Regular and irregular forms

Use the cues to write sentences in the Past Simple.

- My parents are often angry with my brother. (Yesterday/angry with him)  
Yesterday they were angry with him.
- Lucy usually goes to bed late. (Last night/two in the morning)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- My grandfather often loses his glasses. (Yesterday)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Serena usually leaves at eight. (Yesterday/at nine)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Rob usually works in a shop on Saturdays. (Last Saturday/in a café)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Rosa always gets prizes. (Last year/two for art)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- John often sings at parties. (Last night/for two hours!)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- We sometimes play tennis. (Last summer/every day)  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Word Corner

Complete each sentence with the correct word.

architecture, art, biology, engineering, mathematics, music, science

- Emma loves \_\_\_\_\_, especially chemistry.
- Stefan wants to be a painter. He's studying \_\_\_\_\_.
- Angela wants to design buildings one day. She's studying \_\_\_\_\_.
- I'd like to design bridges and roads. I want to study \_\_\_\_\_ at university.
- Luke plays the piano in all the school concerts. He's brilliant at \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is the study of numbers.
- Jess is very interested in animals and plants. She wants to study \_\_\_\_\_.

## 14 COMMUNICATION

### 1 Asking classroom questions

Circle the correct word or sentence.

**Teacher:** The first man walked on the moon at 9.19 on the 21st of July, 1969.

**Ola:** Can you (1) *say/repeat/know* the date, please?

**Teacher:** Yes, Ola. The date was the 21st of July, 1969. And the men in the Apollo 11 spaceship were Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin. Yes, Ola?

**Ola:** (2) *What is 'spaceship'?/What does 'spaceship' mean?/Say 'spaceship' again.*

**Teacher:** Well, when you want to go to the airport, you get a taxi and when you want to go to the moon, you get a spaceship!

**Teacher:** At 9 a.m. on Saturday, the 11th of November, 1989, the people of Eberswalderstrasse, East Berlin ran to the Berlin Wall ...

**Ola:** (3) *Stop!/Hello!/Sorry!*

**Teacher:** Yes, Ola?

**Ola:** (4) Can you *spell/write/see* the German word, please?

**Teacher:** Yes, Ola. It's E-b-e-r-s-w-a-l-d-e-r-s-t-r-a-s-s-e. It's the name of the street.

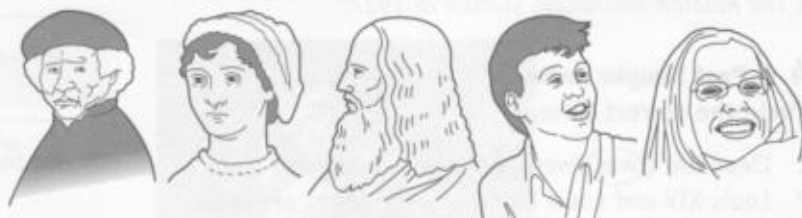
**Ola:** (5) *Thank you./Please./No.* And why did they run to the Berlin Wall? (6) *Can you explain that, please?/Tell me./I want to know, please.*

**Teacher:** Yes, Ola. They ran to the wall and they saw it come down.

### 2 Complete the chart.

Masculine	Feminine
man	woman
male	
	mother
	wife
king	
waiter	
	sister
son	
boy	
businessman	
	aunt
actor	

### 3 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words in brackets. Then say who the people are.



Rembrandt Jane Austen Leonardo da Vinci Paul McCartney Anastacia

- He's a great rock \_\_\_\_\_ but he can't read \_\_\_\_\_. (musical)
- She became a popular \_\_\_\_\_ after her first hit \_\_\_\_\_  
*Not that Kind.* (sing)
- He was an excellent \_\_\_\_\_ who \_\_\_\_\_ *The Night Watch.* (painting)
- She's a well-known \_\_\_\_\_ and she \_\_\_\_\_ *Pride and Prejudice.*  
(writing)
- He was a brilliant \_\_\_\_\_. He \_\_\_\_\_ scissors! (invention)

## Skills Corner

### Writing – an announcement

Write an announcement about a meeting with an imaginary American journalist and writer who is visiting your school. Include information about:

- who the guest is (their name and background),
- what he/she writes about,
- what are his/her biggest professional successes,
- why it's worth coming to the meeting,
- where and when the meeting takes place.

# 15 FOCUS ON WRITING

**1 Punctuation:** put commas in this passage.



Archaeologists made an incredible discovery in 2004. In a cave on a remote island of Indonesia called Flores scientists found the bones of a group of humans who lived between 12000 and 18000 years ago. This early human was one metre tall had hair all over his body and had a brain one third the size of modern humans. Scientists have named him Homo Floresiensis. There were also many tools with the bodies and evidence of fires which proves that Homo Floresiensis was intelligent. This discovery challenges ideas about the origins and development of human beings.

## 2 Spelling

Complete the irregular verbs in the Past Simple with the correct spelling.

### The Beatles

In the 1950s, in Liverpool, England, a young boy called Ivan Vaughan introduced John Lennon to Paul McCartney. At the same time, George Harrison's mum (1) b \_ \_ \_ \_ t him a guitar. And that's when the famous rock group The Beatles (2) b \_ \_ \_ \_ n. Lennon and McCartney's songs (3) w \_ \_ \_ e fantastic and the Beatles (4) b \_ \_ \_ \_ e the number one group in the world by 1964. They (5) w \_ \_ \_ t to the USA and Americans loved their songs, too. The end (6) c \_ \_ \_ e in January 1969 – the last time the Beatles played together. John Lennon (7) m \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ d Yoko Ono and he did not want to play with the group after that.

**3 Use the correct linking words in the box to fill the gaps.**

after, and (3), and then, because, before, but, from ... to, when

Nicole Kidman was born in Honolulu, Hawaii on 20 June, 1967 where her Australian parents were working.

The family lived in Washington DC

(1) \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ 1967 \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ 1970

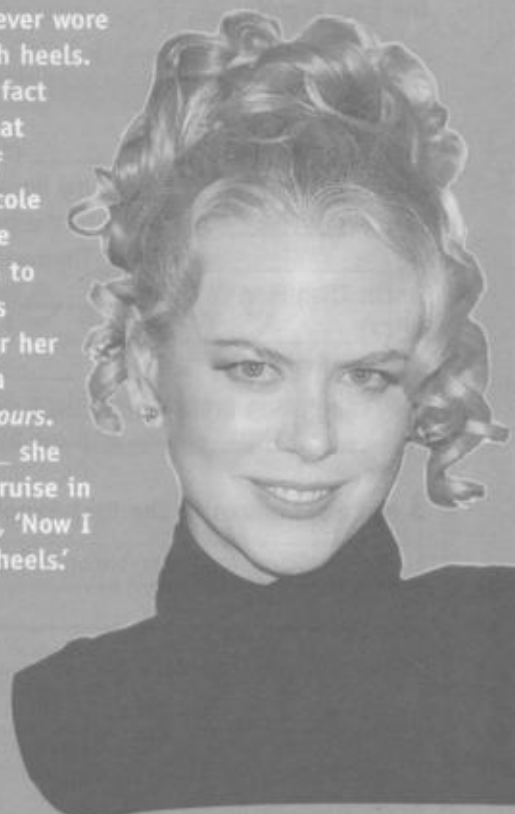
(2) \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ they returned to Australia.

(3) \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ wanting to be an actress, her interest was ballet (4) \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ she soon changed to acting (5) \_ \_ \_ \_ \_

played in many school dramas. Nicole left school to commit herself to a career in acting (6) \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ in 1983 she had a role in her first film. After that she had many acting offers (7) \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ went to work in the USA. She quickly became a very popular film star. At the end of 1990 she married Tom Cruise. (8) \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ Nicole Kidman is nearly six feet tall,

(9) \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ she was with her husband she never wore shoes with high heels. An interesting fact about her is that she is afraid of butterflies! Nicole Kidman was the first Australian to win an Oscar as Best Actress for her part as Virginia Woolf in *The Hours*. (10) \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ she divorced Tom Cruise in 2001, she said, 'Now I can wear high heels.' Today, she demands millions of dollars to act in a film.

Nicole Kidman





# Review 5

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Complete the sentences with the Past Simple of the verbs in brackets.

Thomas Edison (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) born in 1847 in Ohio in the United States. He (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (start) school at the age of eight but he (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (hate) it because on his first day the teacher (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (call) him stupid. After that, he (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) at home a lot of the time and (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (have) lessons from his mother. He also (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (read) a lot of science books at home. He (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) back to school sometimes but he never (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (like) it very much. He (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) school forever at the age of twelve and (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (get) a job with a newsagent. He (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (begin) inventing things at the age of nineteen. In 1877 he (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (invent) the phonograph, a sort of very early CD player! Two years later, he (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (make) the world's first electric light bulb and New York (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (become) the first city to have electric lights.

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct verb in the Past Simple.

come, be, go, meet, have, leave, play, ride, sing, take

Last Saturday it (1) \_\_\_\_\_ my birthday. All my friends (2) \_\_\_\_\_ at my house, and then we (3) \_\_\_\_\_ our bikes to the beach. First, we (4) \_\_\_\_\_ swimming. Then we (5) \_\_\_\_\_ lunch. Then Finn (6) \_\_\_\_\_ his guitar and we all (7) \_\_\_\_\_. I (8) \_\_\_\_\_ lots of photos of the party. We (9) \_\_\_\_\_ the beach at about six in the evening. My friend Tara (10) \_\_\_\_\_ home with me to watch a video.

### 3 Make sentences in the Past Simple.

- 1 we/Thailand/last year/to/on holiday/go  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 last summer/friends/we/make/new/three  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 lesson/be/I/guitar/late/my/yesterday/for  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 watch/me/grandfather/this/my/give/my birthday/for  
\_\_\_\_\_

## VOCABULARY

### 4 Read the sentence and guess the correct meaning of the word.



- 1 The archaeologist found bones in the rock.  
An *archaeologist* is someone who studies:  
a plants.    b dead animals.  
c human things from ancient times.
- 2 The inventor Edison was a genius who invented the light bulb. A *genius* is:  
a interested in electricity.    b very intelligent.  
c an inventor.
- 3 Paul McCartney has a great talent for writing popular songs. *Talent* means:  
a ability to do something well.    b a musical mind.  
c ability to become famous.
- 4 The fire destroyed the building. *Destroy* means:  
a burn completely.    b damage something.  
c damage something completely.
- 5 The strange animal comes from a remote island.  
*Remote* means:  
a having lots of food.    b not near land.  
c dangerous.

### 5 Correct the spelling of these words.

- |                |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1 dangorous    | 6 incredible |
| 2 challange    | 7 biuld      |
| 3 developement | 8 tobbacko   |
| 4 neice        | 9 potatos    |
| 5 enginerig    | 10 comitt    |



# Key Words List

## MODULE 5 HISTORY

### describing life

be born, become, die, live, marry

### history

biography, century, explore/  
exploration, period, the Renaissance,  
revolution

### masculine/feminine

actor/actress, boy/girl,  
brother/sister,  
businessman/businesswoman,  
father/mother,  
grandfather/grandmother,  
husband/wife, king/queen,  
male/female, man/woman, Mr/Miss,  
Mrs, Ms, nephew/niece,  
prince/princess, son/daughter,  
uncle/aunt, waiter/waitress

### military

attack, army, atomic bomb, burn,  
defeat, destroy, hate, helicopter,  
invade/invasion, rebel, submarine,  
tank, territory, terrorist attack,  
violent/violence, war

### science and technology

chemist, build, discover/discovery,  
invent/invention,  
suggest/suggestion, element,  
engineer, experiment, microchip,  
observe/observation, radioactive

### subjects/people

architecture/architect, art/artist,  
biology/biologist, chemistry/chemist,  
engineering/engineer,  
mathematics/mathematician,  
music/musician, physics/physicist,  
science/scientist,

### linking

after, and then, before

### 1 ONE pair does not sound the same. Which pair?

- |               |                     |
|---------------|---------------------|
| 1 where wear  | 5 their there       |
| 2 aren't aunt | 6 practice practise |
| 3 we're were  | 7 right write       |
| 4 buy by      | 8 I eye             |

### 2 Write the Past Simple form of these verbs.

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| 1 live   | 8 attack |
| 2 invent | 9 build  |
| 3 find   | 10 write |
| 4 lose   | 11 drink |
| 5 draw   | 12 die   |
| 6 make   | 13 meet  |
| 7 take   | 14 see   |

### 3 Circle the correct words.

- There were two world wars in the twentieth *revolution/century*.
- The *invention/exploration* of the moon started after Apollo 11 landed on it in 1969.
- My friend wants to study science at university – she likes *history and geography/biology and physics*.
- There is a *painting/painter* of George and the Dragon in an art gallery in London.

- Who *discovered/discovery* penicillin?
- This man died in the eighteenth century and then he came back to his old house. It was brilliant *love story/ghost story*.
- Marie Curie was a *physicist/physics*.

## Module Diary

1 Look at the lessons from Module 5 in your coursebook. Tick the boxes that are true for you.

	easy	OK	difficult
13 Genius			
14 Two leaders			
15 Communication Workshop			

- Which is your favourite lesson? \_\_\_\_\_
- Is the Past Simple still difficult for you?  
Y N
- How often do you use the Mini-dictionary?  
Never Sometimes Often Very often

## Warm-up

comedy, crime, horror, romance, science fiction, thriller



Genre	Action
crime	alien
horror	laugh
fantasy	murder
love story	explore
adventure	kiss
science fiction	monster
comedy	wizard

Complete the questions about a party last week.

- 1 Was the party good?
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ Maria there?
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ Josie and Alice in the band?
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ your brother with his new girlfriend?
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ the people interesting?

Use the cues to make questions.

- 1 This photo is excellent. (you/take it?)  
Did you take it?
- 2 That's a beautiful carpet. (you/buy it in Turkey?)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Dave saw a ghost in the castle. (Katie/see it?)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 We watched a programme about big cats.  
(Mark/see it?)

Complete the questions for the answers given.

- 1 Q: Where were you yesterday?  
A: We were at the cinema.
- 2 Q: \_\_\_\_\_ in Istanbul?  
A: He was there in 2002.
- 3 Q: \_\_\_\_\_ angry?  
A: They were angry because you were late.
- 4 Q: \_\_\_\_\_ those girls in the café?  
A: They were friends of my sister, Soraya.
- 5 Q: \_\_\_\_\_ our homework yesterday?  
A: It was Exercise 4 on page 92.

**4 ★ Wh- questions with other verbs**

Put the words in the correct order to make questions.  
Add capital letters and question marks.

- 1 did/stay/parents/where/your  
Where did your parents stay?
- 2 on/did/do/farm/what/yesterday/you/the  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 go/did/New York/Steve/to/why  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 to/did/learn/chess/when/you/play  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 at/dance/did/party/Sandy's/who/with/you  
\_\_\_\_\_

**5 ★ ★ Yes/No and Wh- questions with to be and other verbs**

Complete the questions for the answers given.

- 1 Q: Was The Animal Show \_\_\_\_\_ good yesterday?  
A: Yes, it was very good.
- 2 Q: \_\_\_\_\_ it?  
A: I watched it at my grandparents' flat.
- 3 Q: \_\_\_\_\_ at their flat?  
A: I was at their flat because my parents were away.
- 4 Q: \_\_\_\_\_ your parents?  
A: They were in Rome.
- 5 Q: In Rome? \_\_\_\_\_ to Rome?  
A: They went to Rome on Saturday.
- 6 Q: \_\_\_\_\_ your grandparents  
\_\_\_\_\_ the show?  
A: Yes, they watched it with me.
- 7 Q: \_\_\_\_\_ it?  
A: Yes, they liked it a lot.
- 8 Q: \_\_\_\_\_ the new people  
in the show this week?  
A: They were Rick's sister, and Kate's boyfriend.
- 9 Q: \_\_\_\_\_ Kate \_\_\_\_\_  
a song?  
A: Yes, she sang that song about a tiger!

**6 ★ Negative with to be**

Write answers in the negative.

- 1 You were late. A: We weren't late.
- 2 It was a true story. A: \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 There were ghosts in the castle. A: \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 There was a monster in the lake. A: \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 You were silly. A: I \_\_\_\_\_

**7 ★ Negative with other verbs**

Put the verbs in the Past Simple negative.

be, dance, ~~enjoy~~, have, go, like, meet

I (1) didn't enjoy my last holiday. I (2) \_\_\_\_\_  
a nice time and I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ any nice people.  
The weather (4) \_\_\_\_\_ good. We (5) \_\_\_\_\_  
swimming because it was very cold. I went to one party  
on the beach but I (6) \_\_\_\_\_ because I  
(7) \_\_\_\_\_ the music.

**8 ★ ★ Affirmative, negative and questions**

Put the verbs in the correct form of the Past Simple.

Dear Nadia,

(1) Did you have (you/have) a good time in  
Scotland? (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (you/learn) Scottish  
dancing? (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (the weather/be) OK?  
(4) \_\_\_\_\_ (the people/be) friendly?  
We (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to New York for two weeks.  
We (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (see) shows on Broadway every  
night and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) really big pizzas!  
We (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (take) a boat trip to Liberty  
Island but we (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (not go) up the  
Statue of Liberty. I (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (love) New  
York but I (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (not/like) the hot  
weather. Alex (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (not/want) to come  
back to England!

**Word Corner**

Match the different cats to the clues.

cheetah, domestic cat, leopard, panther, tiger

- 1 All over the world people have it as a pet.
- 2 It lives in India only.
- 3 It can run very fast.
- 4 It's yellow with dark spots.
- 5 This big cat is always black.



## 17 COMMUNICATION

### 1 Telling and listening to stories

Molly's grandmother is telling her the legend of *George and the Dragon*. Write the words and phrases in the correct places in the story.

very happy, until, Suddenly, Did he fight the dragon, die in the castle, happened, one day

**Grandmother:** Una was the daughter of a king and queen. She loved her mother and father and they were very happy. But (1) \_\_\_\_\_ a dragon came to her country. It breathed fire and killed lots of people.

**Molly:** What (2) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**Grandmother:** Una and the king and queen ran away from the dragon. They escaped to their castle but the dragon sat outside and waited.

**Molly:** Did the king and queen and Una (3) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**Grandmother:** No, they didn't. Una went out of the castle. She walked a long way (4) \_\_\_\_\_ she came to the castle of the famous knight, George, and she asked him to help her. George went back to the king and queen's castle with Una.

**Molly:** (5) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**Grandmother:** Yes. He ran to the dragon with his sword. (6) \_\_\_\_\_, the dragon opened its mouth. But George put his sword in the dragon's mouth and killed it. The king and queen and Una and the people in the towns and villages were all (7) \_\_\_\_\_.

### 2 Choose the correct preposition to complete the sentences.

- 1 It's very cold and we need to put on/out warm clothes.
- 2 Joanna is not in love to/with him.
- 3 I don't want to talk for/about what happened.
- 4 When it rains, we all come in/on and watch television.
- 5 I heard the news when I turned on/down the radio.
- 6 We use this map to find out about/for the correct route.
- 7 She went out of/out the room and closed the door.
- 8 Are you turning off/out your computer before you go to bed?

### 3 Nouns, verbs or adjectives?

What parts of speech are the underlined words?

Write n (noun), v (verb) or a (adjective) in the box for each sentence.

- 1 It was a horrible ghost story.
- 2 A ghost came into my room.
- 3 I like a good adventure story.
- 4 We had an adventure on holiday.
- 5 I loved the story of Beowulf.
- 6 She didn't read the love story.
- 7 When the phone rings it's usually for you.
- 8 When they married he bought her a ring.

## Skills Corner

### Speaking – photo description

Look at the photo and answer the questions.

- 1 What do you think happened?
- 2 Would you like to work in a rescue team? Why? Why not?





## 18 FOCUS ON WRITING

1 Write the six sentences in the Present tense in Exercise 2 page 44 in the Past Simple.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Punctuation: review

Write these sentences again with capital letters, full stops, question marks, commas and apostrophes.

- 1 the story is about epicac a big computer  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 i was in love with pat but she wasnt in love with me  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 the computer said ive written a love poem for pat  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 will you marry me i asked pat and i gave her one of epicacs poems  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 pat said she wants a love poem on every wedding anniversary  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 3 Linking words in stories

Write words and phrases in the correct place to complete the story.

suddenly, one day, in the end, after that, when, many centuries ago, then

## The Legend of King Arthur

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ there was no king in England.

(2) \_\_\_\_\_ the people saw a sword in a rock. The words on the sword were:



A lot of men pulled the sword (3) \_\_\_\_\_ but they didn't pull it from the rock.

(4) \_\_\_\_\_ a boy called Arthur put his hand on the sword and pulled it.

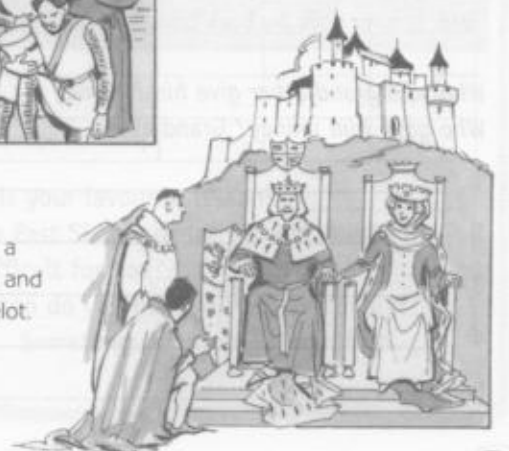
(5) \_\_\_\_\_ it came out of the rock.



(6) \_\_\_\_\_ the people saw Arthur with Excalibur, they saw their new king.

Arthur was a good king.

(7) \_\_\_\_\_ he married a beautiful queen called Guinevere and they lived in a place called Camelot.



# Review 6

## GRAMMAR

**1** Complete the sentences with the Past Simple of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ (you/be) at Charlie's party?
- 2 I \_\_\_\_\_ (not buy) the red shoes.
- 3 Where \_\_\_\_\_ (Philip/be) yesterday?
- 4 What \_\_\_\_\_ (you/think) of the film?
- 5 The sandwiches \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) very good.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ (she/hear) a strange noise?
- 7 They \_\_\_\_\_ (not see) a monster in the lake.
- 8 Why \_\_\_\_\_ (they/be) frightened last night?

**2** Write questions in the Past Simple.

- 1 What (he/buy) you for your birthday?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 2 What time (they/leave) the party?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 3 What (you all/have) for supper?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 4 Who (you/meet) at the shops?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 5 Who (Lucy/take) to the dance?

\_\_\_\_\_

**3** Read Andy's present list and write questions for the answers.

### Andy's birthday presents

money from grandfather, CD from Maria, bike from Mum and Dad, jumper from Jo, book from Tom, video from Sandy

*What did grandfather give him? Money*

*Who gave him money? Grandfather*

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ ? A CD.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ ? Jo.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ ? Tom.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ ? A bicycle.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ ? A video.

## VOCABULARY

**4** Look at the pictures. Put them in the correct order and write the story in the Past Simple.



**5** Match the word and its meaning.

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| 1 a ghost        | a a story or film about cowboys in the USA |
| 2 a panther      | b a wild animal like a dog                 |
| 3 an alien       | c a very big strange animal or person      |
| 4 a horror story | d a very big black cat                     |
| 5 a wizard       | e a strange creature from another world    |
| 6 a monster      | f a shape of a dead person                 |
| 7 a wolf         | g a story with cruel or frightening acts   |
| 8 a western      | h someone who can do magic things          |

# Key Words List

## MODULE 6 TELLING STORIES

### fiction

adventure story, comedy, crime, fantasy, ghost story, horror story, love story, novel, play, poem, romance, science fiction, story, thriller

### stories

author, alien, conqueror, ghost, monster, wizard

### legends

armour, castle, knight, sword

### linking expressions

and then, after that, in the end, the next day/night, one day/night, then, suddenly, when

### asking questions

Did ... ?

How/What/When/Where/Why did ... ?

What happened?

### multi-part verbs

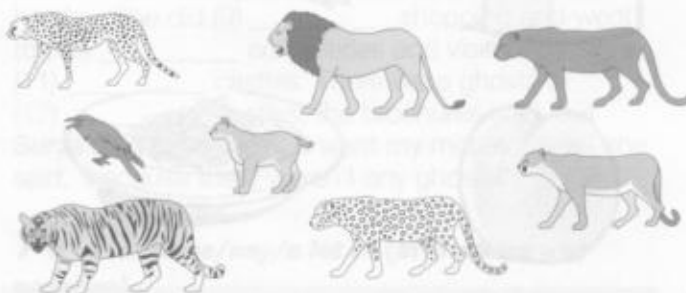
be based on, believe in, burnt out, come from, come in, come out (of), find out (about), get up, go away, go out (of), leave behind, take down, turn off/on, protect ... from ...

### 1 Put the correct words together to make a new word.

- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| 1 film  | work    |
| 2 child | looking |
| 3 gun   | surfing |
| 4 wind  | hood    |
| 5 up    | cat     |
| 6 news  | star    |
| 7 good  | stairs  |
| 8 wild  | paper   |
| 9 fire  | powder  |

### 2 Which animal is NOT a cat?

- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1 cheetah | 5 lion    |
| 2 panther | 6 raven   |
| 3 tiger   | 7 leopard |
| 4 lynx    | 8 puma    |



## Module Diary

1 Look at the lessons from Module 6 in your coursebook. Tick the boxes that are true for you.

	easy	OK	difficult
16 Big cats			
17 A love story			
18 Communication Workshop			

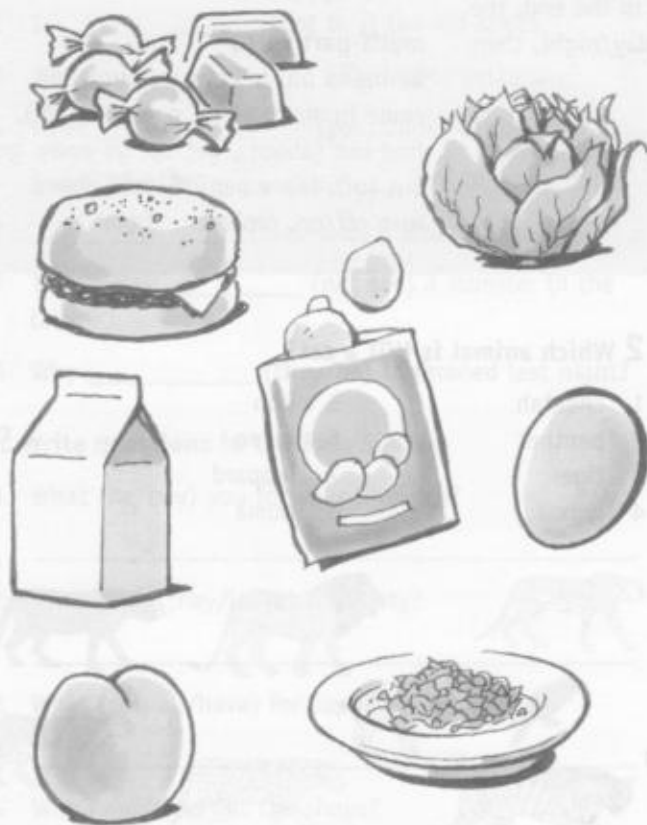
- Which is your favourite lesson? \_\_\_\_\_
- Are the Past Simple negatives and questions still difficult for you? Y N
- How often do you use the Mini-dictionary?  
Never Sometimes Often Very often



# 7 Healthy Living

## Warm-up

1 Complete the table with the words in the box.



sweets, cabbage, beef, water, banana, melon, hamburger, butter, chocolate, coffee, crisps, sausage, sugar, breakfast cereal, chicken, tomato, grapes, egg, peas, tea, apple, sardine, lemon, ham, orange, milk, carrot, pizza, onion, beans, biscuit, salami, oil, pasta, peppers, peach, chips, rice, tuna, lemonade, nuts, cola, cheese

meat/fish	vegetables	drinks	other food

2 My favourite food. Choose three for each.

meat/fish: \_\_\_\_\_

vegetables: \_\_\_\_\_

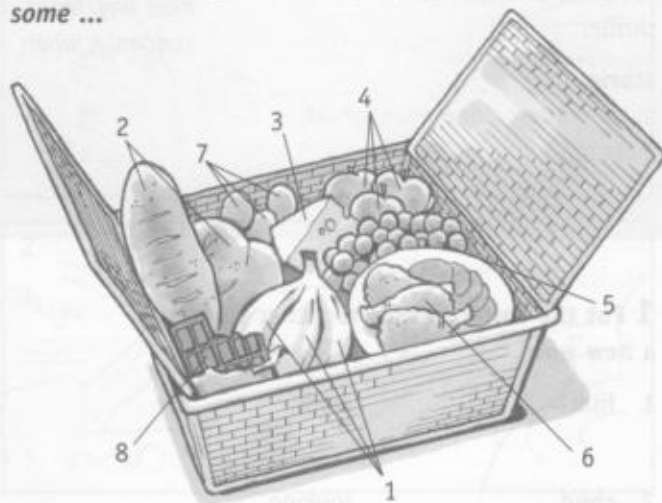
drinks: \_\_\_\_\_

other food: \_\_\_\_\_

## 19 GRAMMAR

1 ★ **some (affirmative)**

What's in the bag? Write sentences with *There is/are some ...*



1 There are some bananas.

2 \_\_\_\_\_

3 \_\_\_\_\_

4 \_\_\_\_\_

5 \_\_\_\_\_

6 \_\_\_\_\_

7 \_\_\_\_\_

8 \_\_\_\_\_

2 ★ **any (negative)**

Use the shopping list to write sentences in your notebook, starting *We haven't got any ...*

### SHOPPING LIST

1 butter We haven't got any butter.

2 pasta

3 crisps

4 milk

5 lemons

6 onions

7 orange juice



3 ★ Questions with *any* and short answers

Use the cues to write questions with *Is/Are there any* and short answers.

- 1 (there/be) milk in the fridge? (✓)

Q: Is there any milk in the fridge?A: Yes, there is.

- 2 (there/be) good films on TV tonight? (✓)

Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

- 3 (there/be) water in the swimming pool? (X)

Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

- 4 (there/be) fruit on the table? (X)

Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

- 5 (there/be) money in my bag? (X)

Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

4 ★ ★ *some or any?*

Complete the sentences with *some* or *any*.

- Jack doesn't have any brothers but he has two sisters.
- Please get me some cold water.
- Here's some fruit juice for you and some tea for your mother.
- Please don't put any milk in my coffee.
- There is some bread on the table but there aren't any sandwiches.

5 ★ *a lot of*

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- a/fridge./in/lemonade/lot/of/the/There's  
There's a lot of lemonade in the fridge.
- a/homework./in/lot/made/mistakes/of/I/my  
\_\_\_\_\_
- a/lot/money/of/spent/We/yesterday.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- a/at/ate/I/lot/my/of/party./sister's/sweets  
\_\_\_\_\_
- a/always/lot/of/oil/on/puts/her salad./She  
\_\_\_\_\_

6 ★ ★ *some/any/a lot of* (affirmative and negative)

Use the table to complete the text.

## Magic Holidays

Name of holiday	sun	shopping	swimming and sailing	art galleries	castles ghosts
Mazurian Lake Tours	***	*	***	0	*
Irish Castles Tour	0	*	0	***	***

KEY: 0 = not any \* = some \*\*\* = a lot of

Becky and Mark went to Poland last year. They wanted sun and they got (1) a lot of sun. Every day they went out on Lake Mamry and they did (2) some swimming, sailing and fishing. They did (3) some shopping but not a lot. They didn't visit (4) any galleries. They visited (5) some castles but they didn't see (6) any ghosts on their Mazurian Lake Tours holiday.

Surya loved the Irish Castles Tour. The weather was terrible and there wasn't (7) any sun but she didn't mind. There wasn't (8) any swimming or sailing because it wasn't that sort of holiday. She did (9) some shopping and went to (10) some art galleries and visited (11) some castles. There were ghosts in (12) some castles, the brochures said, but Surya didn't see them. 'I want my money back,' she said, 'because there weren't any ghosts!'

7 ★ ★ ★ *some/any/a lot of* (affirmative and negative)

You are planning a party. In your notebook, write six sentences saying what you need and don't need to get. Use *some/any/a lot of*.

I want to get a lot of crisps.  
I don't want any sweets.  
We need to buy some fruit.

## Word Corner

Match the containers with their contents.

cereal, chocolate, oil, tuna, yoghurt

- a bar of \_\_\_\_\_
- a bottle of \_\_\_\_\_
- a carton of \_\_\_\_\_
- a packet of \_\_\_\_\_
- a tin of \_\_\_\_\_

## 20 COMMUNICATION

1 Look at the illustration and answer the questions.

### You are what you eat!

We need a balanced diet

These give energy but also too much salt or sugar.	These give protein and vitamins.	These make strong teeth and bones.	These give vitamins and fibre.	These give energy, vitamins and minerals.
--	----------------------------------	------------------------------------	--------------------------------	---

- Which food makes healthy teeth and bones?
- Why are apples good for you?
- Why are lots of cakes not a good idea?
- Describe a healthy breakfast.
- Why is an egg sandwich good for you?

2 Use words from A and B in the table to complete the shopping list.

A	B	
a packet of	chocolate	biscuits
a tin of	sausages	crisps
a bottle of	carrots	tuna
a carton of	bread	beans
a bar of	butter	yoghurt
a can of	lemonade	milk
some	apples	mineral water
a box of	cereal	nuts
a bag of	sugar	cola

SHOPPING LIST

breakfast	lunch	between meals
a bottle of milk		

3 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- Smoking is a very healthy habit.
- Jo's good at English and maths – she's very stupid.
- Your hands are very clean – go and wash them.
- Eating lots of fruit and vegetables is a bad idea.
- I hate washing-up – it's so interesting.
- Jumping is a useless exercise for basketball.

## Skills Corner

### Listening – multiple choice

(Recording SB page 59, Lesson 20, Exercise 6)

Listen to the radio programme.  
Read the statements (1–5) and  
choose the correct answer  
(A, B, C or D).

- The advice in the programme comes from
  - the presenter.
  - a health expert.
  - a newspaper.
  - a book.
- What is a healthy breakfast?
  - fruit and yoghurt
  - cereal and fruit
  - cereal and yoghurt
  - cereal, fruit and yoghurt
- The programme does not advise us to
  - go swimming.
  - run at school.
  - walk up the stairs.
  - cycle.
- The advice about diet is
  - to eat a lot.
  - to eat different kinds of food.
  - to drink milk and water.
  - to eat a lot of salads.
- The presenter says that smoking
  - tobacco is not dangerous.
  - kills four thousand people every year.
  - is dangerous when we work with chemicals.
  - is a bad habit.

## 21 FOCUS ON WRITING

### 1 Advice for you

Write five sentences with advice to yourself about fitness, exercise and food. Choose five of these cues to help you.

Eat more ...

Don't eat ...

Have some ...

Do more ...

Walk ...

Use ...

with your ...

... every day.

### 2 Punctuation: commas in lists

When we write a list, we write commas after each thing on the list. Before the last thing we write *and* and no comma.

**Example:** For breakfast I have cereal, milk, bread, cheese and coffee.

Put commas in the correct places in the lists.

- 1 For lunch on Monday we have tuna beans and potatoes.
- 2 He had bread potatoes sugar tomatoes and cheese on his shopping list.
- 3 Get a carton of fruit juice a can of cola and some sweets, please.
- 4 We have got some oranges apples tea coffee melon and milk.
- 5 Eat a lot of bananas yoghurt apples oranges melon and vegetables

### 3 Spelling

Complete these words and match them with the pictures.

1 yo \_ \_ u \_ \_

2 ca \_ \_ o \_ s

3 po \_ \_ a \_ oe \_

4 ca \_ \_ a \_ e

5 \_ au \_ a \_ es

6 to \_ a \_ oe \_

7 sa \_ d \_ i \_ \_ es

8 bu \_ \_ e \_



### 4 Linking with *but/however*

*But* and *however* have the same meaning. *However* starts a new sentence and there is a comma after it.

Examples:

*I don't get a lot of exercise but I don't smoke.*

*We have no seats for the flight on Tuesday.*

*However, I can get you three seats for Wednesday.*

Use the cues to make sentences with *but* or *However*.

- 1 A lot of our teachers are women/we have some men teachers. (However,)
- 2 A lot of pupils learn English/some learn German. (but)
- 3 Many of the pupils in my class are helpful/some are not. (However,)
- 4 We all do sport/only a few of us play tennis. (but)
- 5 My friends are cool/they don't always do their homework. (but)

### 5 Guided writing

In your notebook, write four statements about your family or friends. What do they eat/drink?

Write two statements with *but* and two with *However*.

My sister eats cheese but she doesn't eat meat.

Adam likes tea. However, he never drinks it with milk.

# Review 7

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Complete the sentences with *some* or *any*.

- A: Have we got (1) \_\_\_\_\_ juice?  
 B: Yes, there's (2) \_\_\_\_\_ orange juice in the fridge.  
 A: Is there (3) \_\_\_\_\_ ice?  
 B: Yes, there's (4) \_\_\_\_\_ ice in the freezer.  
 A: Good. Have we got (5) \_\_\_\_\_ fruit?  
 B: Yes. We've got (6) \_\_\_\_\_ bananas.  
 A: Are there (7) \_\_\_\_\_ apples?  
 B: No. But there are (8) \_\_\_\_\_ strawberries.  
 A: Good. And have we got (9) \_\_\_\_\_ ice cream?  
 B: Yes. There's (10) \_\_\_\_\_ chocolate ice cream in the fridge. What do you want all this for?  
 A: I want to make a new kind of fruit salad for supper.

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct words.

- 1 He hasn't got \_\_\_\_\_ sisters.  
 a some    b any    c no  
 2 He's got \_\_\_\_\_ nice photos of Emily.  
 a a lot    b some    c any  
 3 There \_\_\_\_\_ good magazines in the shop.  
 a were some    b were any    c was some  
 4 \_\_\_\_\_ good ice cream at the supermarket?  
 a Were there any    b Were there some    c Was there any  
 5 There \_\_\_\_\_ hot food in the kitchen.  
 a are some    b is some    c is any  
 6 Have you got \_\_\_\_\_ money in the bank?  
 a a    b any    c a lot  
 7 I do \_\_\_\_\_ exercise every day.  
 a any    b a lot    c some  
 8 There \_\_\_\_\_ fruit in this yoghurt.  
 a isn't any    b isn't some    c aren't any  
 9 Did you buy \_\_\_\_\_ of vegetables yesterday?  
 a any    b some    c a lot  
 10 I didn't use \_\_\_\_\_ shampoo this morning.  
 a a lot of    b some    c a bottle

## VOCABULARY

### 3 Write the opposites.

- 1 healthy  
 2 badly  
 3 useful  
 4 heavy  
 5 strong  
 6 always  
 7 young  
 8 interesting  
 9 clean  
 10 fat  
 11 good for you  
 12 outside



### 4 Fill the gaps with *a/an/the, some or at, in, on*.

## Mike the Headless Chicken



(1) \_\_\_\_\_ 10 September, 1945, (2) \_\_\_\_\_ farmers decided to kill (3) \_\_\_\_\_ chickens (4) \_\_\_\_\_ Colorado, USA. They cut (5) \_\_\_\_\_ head off (6) \_\_\_\_\_ chicken called Mike. Everyone knows that (7) \_\_\_\_\_ chicken without its head cannot live more than (8) \_\_\_\_\_ few moments. However, Mike began to walk around (9) \_\_\_\_\_ floor and (10) \_\_\_\_\_ next day (11) \_\_\_\_\_ farmer decided to feed him. (12) \_\_\_\_\_ chicken began to grow fat! (13) \_\_\_\_\_ businessman came and promised (14) \_\_\_\_\_ farmers that they could make money showing Mike to people (15) \_\_\_\_\_ shows (16) \_\_\_\_\_ America. There was (17) \_\_\_\_\_ picture of Mike (18) \_\_\_\_\_ Life magazine. Many scientists examined Mike. (19) \_\_\_\_\_ chicken lived (20) \_\_\_\_\_ long time and died (21) \_\_\_\_\_ March, 1947! (22) \_\_\_\_\_ 2004, there was (23) \_\_\_\_\_ website called [www.miketheheadlesschicken.org](http://www.miketheheadlesschicken.org). You can read about Mike on (24) \_\_\_\_\_ Internet.



# Key Words List

## MODULE 7 HEALTHY LIVING

### food

*vegetables:* avocado, cabbage, carrot, onion, peas, pepper, potato, salad, tomato

*fruit:* apple, banana, grape, kiwi, lemon, melon, orange, peach

*meat/fish:* beef, burger, chicken, cold meat, ham, hamburger, salami, sardine, sausage, tuna

*drinks:* coffee, cola, fruit juice, fizzy drink, lemonade, milk, mineral water, sports drink, tea, water

*other food:* biscuit, bread, breakfast cereal, butter, cake, cheese, chewing gum, chips, crisps, dairy product, egg, nut, oil, pasta pizza, rice, sandwich, sugar, sweets

### food words

calorie, fibre, mineral, protein, vitamin, breakfast, lunch, dinner, junk food

### containers

bag, bar, bottle, bowl, box, can, carton, packet, tin

### advice

bag/good for you, eat a balanced diet, eat well, give up/stop smoking, look after your teeth, lose weight

### activities

*healthy:* aerobic exercise, dance, do exercises, go to the gym, jog, laugh a lot, run  
*unhealthy:* eating crisps/sweets, eating badly, smoking, not doing exercises

### parts of the body

bone, elbow, heart, knee, muscle, tooth, big toe

### opposites

always/never, bad/good, badly/well, dirty/clean, easy/difficult, fat/thin, fit/unfit, healthy/unhealthy, heavy/light, important/unimportant, interesting/uninteresting, nasty/nice, outside/inside, useful/useless, weak/strong, young/old

### prepositions (place)

at (at home), on (on the floor/shelf/table), in (in the fridge)

### linking

but, however

## 1 Fill the gaps with the correct form of the verb.

give up, mean, tidy, keep, dig, clean, reach, give, repeat, burn

- You can \_\_\_\_\_ floors to exercise your elbows and knees.
- How does dancing \_\_\_\_\_ us fit?
- Did the gym \_\_\_\_\_ you any advice about exercises?
- Cleaning floors \_\_\_\_\_ the same calories as playing volleyball.
- \_\_\_\_\_ the exercises every day to stay healthy.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ smoking about three months ago.
- You can get fit \_\_\_\_\_ your room.
- Dad \_\_\_\_\_ the garden on Saturdays last summer.
- Can you \_\_\_\_\_ the bottle on the top shelf?
- Aerobic exercise \_\_\_\_\_ it brings a lot of oxygen to your muscles.

## 2 Junk food

List the all food and drink you think are 'junk food'. Do you eat or drink any regularly? Complete one of these sentences.

- I need to change my diet because \_\_\_\_\_
- I don't need to change my diet because \_\_\_\_\_

## Module Diary

1 Look at the lessons from Module 7 in your coursebook. Tick the boxes that are true for you.

	easy	OK	difficult
19 Food for thought			
20 Keep fit			
21 Communication Workshop			

- Which is your favourite lesson? \_\_\_\_\_
- Are some, any, a lot of difficult for you? Y N
- How often do you use the Mini-dictionary?  
Never Sometimes Often Very often



# 8 Sport

## Warm-up

### 1 Match the sport, game or activity with the place.

swimming, squash, cycling, hang gliding, hockey, horse racing, ice skating, tennis, parachuting, rock climbing, skiing, basketball, football, flying, motor racing, sailing, windsurfing, fishing, climbing, cricket, surfing, badminton, diving, athletics, golf

water: \_\_\_\_\_

grass: \_\_\_\_\_

mountains: \_\_\_\_\_

air: \_\_\_\_\_

ice/snow: \_\_\_\_\_

court: \_\_\_\_\_

pitch: \_\_\_\_\_

track: \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Use the correct preposition to fill the gaps.

above, across, away, off (2), in, into (2), on (2), over, round, to, up

- 1 She climbed \_\_\_\_\_ the mountain and soon reached the top.
- 2 He waited \_\_\_\_\_ his car for the race to start.
- 3 The plane flew high \_\_\_\_\_ the clouds.
- 4 He jumped \_\_\_\_\_ the board and dived \_\_\_\_\_ the water.
- 5 We use skis to move \_\_\_\_\_ the snow.
- 6 He fell \_\_\_\_\_ his horse and landed \_\_\_\_\_ the grass.
- 7 They stood \_\_\_\_\_ their boards and the wind took them \_\_\_\_\_ the waves.
- 8 Paula threw the ball \_\_\_\_\_ the nearest player.
- 9 Beckham kicked the ball \_\_\_\_\_ the bar.
- 10 His golf ball rolled \_\_\_\_\_ the hole and stopped two metres \_\_\_\_\_.

## 22 GRAMMAR

### 1 ★ can/can't

Complete the rules with *can* or *can't*.

## Greenhill Summer School

### Rules and Information

- 1 The swimming pool is closed in the morning, but you can use it between 4 p.m. and 8 p.m. every day.
- 2 No cooking in your rooms! It's OK to have tea and coffee in your room but you \_\_\_\_\_ make meals.
- 3 There are different trips every week. You \_\_\_\_\_ get information and buy tickets at the office.
- 4 It's OK to have mobile phones but students \_\_\_\_\_ use them in class.
- 5 The telephone in the office is for teachers only. Students \_\_\_\_\_ use the pay phones on the first floor.
- 6 Lunch is between 12 and 2 p.m. Always stay at school during the break. Students \_\_\_\_\_ leave the school during the lunch break. It isn't allowed.
- 7 Students \_\_\_\_\_ go into the village in their free time. You \_\_\_\_\_ get a number 10 bus in front of the school.

### 2 ★ Questions and short answers with *can*

Complete the questions then answer them with *Yes, we can* or *No, we can't*.

## School Rules Questionnaire

- 1 Can you use calculators in your maths lessons?  
Yes, we can.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ wear baseball hats in class?
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ smoke in the playground?
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ bring your personal stereos to school?
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ choose your place in the classroom?

3 ★ **have/has to**

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- have/make/to/once/supper/week/a/I  
I have to make supper once a week.
- has/do/My/the/every/brother/to/day/washing-up  
My brother has to wash up every day.
- week/We/once/clean/have/our/classroom/to/a  
We have to clean our classroom once a week.
- goggles/in/We/wear/chemistry classes/sometimes/to/have  
We have to wear goggles in chemistry classes sometimes.
- every/at/My/has/leave/house/mother/morning/six-thirty/to/the  
My mother has to leave home every morning at six-thirty.

4 ★ **don't/doesn't have to**

Circle the correct form in each sentence.

- We (doesn't/don't) have to wear a uniform at my school.
- Students (don't have to/haven't to) stand when a teacher comes into the room.
- Dave (doesn't/don't) have to wear a tie at his new job.
- My sister (hasn't to/doesn't have to) be at work until eleven o'clock today.
- I (doesn't/don't) have to get up early at weekends.

5 ★ **Questions with have to**

Use the cues to write questions with **have to**. Write the answers in your notebook.

In your country ...

- How old/you/be to drive?  
How old do you have to be to drive?
- How old/you/be to leave school?  
How old do you have to be to leave school?
- you/go to school on Saturdays?  
Do you have to go to school on Saturdays?
- join the army after school?  
Do you have to join the army after school?
- pay for your school books?  
Do you have to pay for your school books?

6 ★ ★ **can, can't, have to, don't have to**

Complete the sentences with the correct word or phrase.

In Britain you (1) have to go to school when you are five years old. You (2) don't have to leave school at sixteen but of course, you (3) have to. A lot of students stay at school until they're eighteen and then go to university. You (4) can get married at sixteen but your parents (5) can't say it's OK. You (6) can go into a pub and buy lemonade and soft drinks when you are fourteen but you (7) can't buy alcoholic drinks. You (8) can't buy cigarettes until you're sixteen and you (9) can't be crazy to start smoking! Boys can join the army at sixteen but girls (10) can't be seventeen. Boys and girls (11) can't be seventeen to start driving.

7 ★ ★ **can't, have/has to, don't/doesn't have to**

Complete the sentences with the correct word or phrase.



A zoo keeper (1) has to like animals. He/She (2) can't be scared of any animals. He/She (3) has to wear smart clothes. He/She (4) has to be healthy and strong!



Nurses (5) have to wear a uniform. They (6) can like helping people. They (7) can't work at night sometimes. They (8) can't be late for work. They (9) can speak a lot of languages.



A painter (10) has to love art. He/She (11) has to wear a uniform. He/She (12) has to get up early. He/She (13) has to work in an office.

## Word Corner

Match the words to the pictures.



flippers 6  
glove 2  
mask 3  
puck 7

snorkel 5  
stick 4  
swimming cap 1

## 23 COMMUNICATION

### 1 Talking about sport

Circle the correct word to complete the dialogues.

#### THE TENNIS GAME

**Anna:** Did you (1) *score/beat/win* Gosia at tennis?

**Dorota:** No! I didn't win a (2) *set/score/tennis*. Gosia won all three sets. She played (3) *badly/happily/brilliantly*.

#### THE 100 METRES

**Stefan:** I run in the 100 metres for my club every weekend and I do long jump sometimes. I love (4) *football/tennis/athletics*.

**Paul:** Did you (5) *score/win/beat* the 100 metres last weekend?

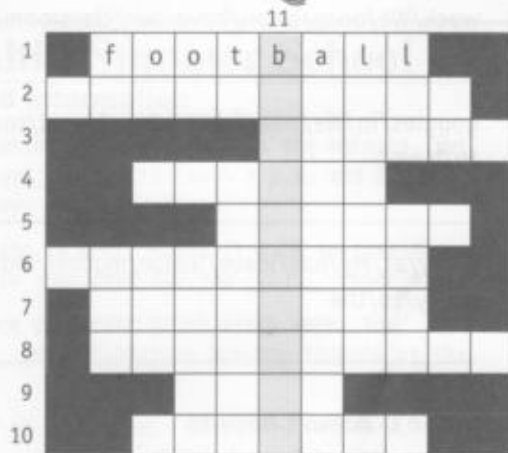
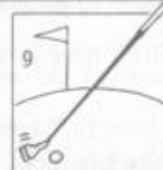
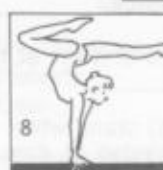
**Stefan:** Yes, I (6) *scored/won/beat*. I ran very (7) *badly/good/well*.

#### FOOTBALL

**Adam:** Is there a football (8) *game/set/match* on TV?

**José:** Yes, Barcelona against Ajax. When they played in Amsterdam, Ajax (9) *won/scored/beat* Barcelona two-one. Cocu (10) *scored/score/set* Barcelona's goal.

3 Look at the pictures and write the names of the sports in the crossword. What is number 11?



2 Write your sports results. All your favourite football teams and tennis players win.

Last week Chelsea beat Newcastle two-nil. Robben scored one goal and ...

4 Write the names of the sports equipment under each picture.



## Skills Corner

### Reading - true/false

Read the newspaper article. Are the sentences below true or false?

- 1 ☐ The cup on sale this weekend is the first FA cup.
- 2 ☐ The FA presented this cup to the winning teams between 1896 and 1910.
- 3 ☐ A thief stole the first cup from a shop window in London.
- 4 ☐ Lord Kinnaid was the president of the Football Association for 21 years.
- 5 ☐ A World Cup trophy sold in 1997 for £300,000.

### Oldest FA Cup goes on sale

**LONDON** The oldest Football Association Cup goes on sale at Christie's auction house in London this weekend.

A cup that the Football Association presented to the winning teams between 1896 and 1910 goes on sale today. It is not the first FA cup. A thief stole the first cup from a shop window in Birmingham in 1895. This second cup went to Lord Kinnaid in 1911 to celebrate his 21st anniversary as President of the Football Association. It is made of silver and experts say its price may reach a record £300,000.

The most expensive football item so far was a World Cup trophy which sold in 1997 for £254,500.



## 24 FOCUS ON WRITING

### 1 Spelling

You can often make an adverb from an adjective by adding -ly. Adjectives that end in -y, change to -ily.

**Examples:** *successful* → *successfully* *happy* → *happily*

**Complete the sentences. Use the adjectives in bracket to write adverbs with the correct spelling.**

- I get angry when my team plays \_\_\_\_\_. (bad)
- I \_\_\_\_\_ watch Arsenal when they play Manchester United. (usual)
- Mark stopped the goal \_\_\_\_\_. (quick)
- Pete Sampras wins most of his tennis matches \_\_\_\_\_. (easy)
- In the last World Cup Final Brazil started \_\_\_\_\_. (nervous)

### 2 Linking with *before*, *during* and *after*

We use these linking words to show when things happened:



**Look at Robert's day. Then choose *before*, *during* or *after* to complete the sentences. Use the time cues to help you.**

Robert's day:

9.00 – 12.30 – at school

14.00 – 16.30 – football

17.00 – home

- 10.00: \_\_\_\_\_ he played football, Robert had a German lesson.
- 16.45: \_\_\_\_\_ he played football, Robert went home.
- 14.00–16.30: Robert's girlfriend, Rita, was nervous \_\_\_\_\_ the game.
- 13.30: Robert had a small lunch \_\_\_\_\_ the game.
- 17.00: Robert had a shower \_\_\_\_\_ the game.
- 14.00–16.30: Robert felt good \_\_\_\_\_ the game.

## Language Problem Solving 2

### HOW MUCH/HOW MANY

#### 1 Write questions with *How much/many*.

- \_\_\_\_\_ days are there in January?
- \_\_\_\_\_ Blue CDs have you got?
- \_\_\_\_\_ fruit did you eat yesterday?
- \_\_\_\_\_ did that sweater cost?
- \_\_\_\_\_ times a week do you wash your hair?
- \_\_\_\_\_ money did they give you last week?
- \_\_\_\_\_ milk would you like in your tea?
- \_\_\_\_\_ postcards did you send from Scotland?
- \_\_\_\_\_ chocolate did she eat?
- \_\_\_\_\_ water do you drink a day?

### SUBJECT AND OBJECT QUESTIONS

#### 2 Use the cues to write questions. Choose the answers from the box.

the Beatles – 1965 – *Hey Jude*  
 Marie Curie – 1902 – polonium  
 Steven Spielberg – 1982 – *Jurassic Park*  
 Walt Disney – 1928 – Donald Duck  
 Leonardo da Vinci – 1502 – *Leda and the Swan*

- discover/radium? Who discovered radium? Marie Curie.  
 When? When did she discover it? In 1902.  
 What else? What else did she discover? Polonium.
- paint/the *Mona Lisa*? \_\_\_\_\_  
 When? \_\_\_\_\_  
 What else? \_\_\_\_\_
- write the song/*Yesterday*? \_\_\_\_\_  
 When? \_\_\_\_\_  
 What else? \_\_\_\_\_
- direct/E.T? \_\_\_\_\_  
 When? \_\_\_\_\_  
 What else? \_\_\_\_\_
- invent/Mickey Mouse? \_\_\_\_\_  
 When? \_\_\_\_\_  
 What else? \_\_\_\_\_

# Review 8

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Choose the correct verb for each rule.

#### *In this sports club, you ...*

- 1 *can/have to* wear sports shoes in the gym.
- 2 *can't/don't have to* wear a swimming hat in the pool.
- 3 *can/have to* take a shower before you go in the pool.
- 4 *can/have to* get drinks from the machine.
- 5 *can/have to* show your card at the desk.

### 2 Complete the questions with the correct question words.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ many days are there in February this year?
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ time did they arrive?
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ of these two shirts do you prefer?
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ much did those binoculars cost?
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ did you do after lunch yesterday?
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ are you so tired today?
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ did they sleep on Saturday night - in London or Brighton?
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ are these pens: mine or Dave's?
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ usually gets up first in your family?
- 10 '\_\_\_\_\_ did you learn to walk?' 'I was one, I think.'

### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct words.

- 1 My sister \_\_\_\_\_ get up very early every day.  
a have to    b has    c has to
- 2 The story \_\_\_\_\_ to be very long.  
a doesn't have    b hasn't    c can't
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ we have to go to the library now?  
a Does    b Can    c Do
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ usually cooks dinner in your family?  
a Whose    b What    c Who
- 5 In football, you \_\_\_\_\_ hit the ball with your head.  
a can    b can't    c have to

- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ time did your homework take?  
a How many    b How much    c How long
- 7 You \_\_\_\_\_ use your mobile phone on the plane.  
a haven't to    b don't have to    c can't
- 8 She \_\_\_\_\_ wear white clothes for tennis. Any colour is OK.  
a can't    b hasn't to    c doesn't have to
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ eggs would you like for breakfast?  
a How much    b How many    c How often
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ helmet did you wear?  
a Whose    b Who's    c Who

## VOCABULARY

### 4 Correct the spellings.

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1 tormament   | 6 atheletics  |
| 2 desparately | 7 commentry   |
| 3 bisciut     | 8 parashuting |
| 4 compitition | 9 seperate    |
| 5 excercise   | 10 commitee   |

### 5 Fill the gap to complete the chart.

noun	adjective	adverb
anger		
	brave	
		nationally
brilliance		
	mechanical	
	scientific	
fame		
	fantastic	
slowness		
danger		
		successfully
base		

## Use of English

## 1 Sentence transformation

Write each sentence again so that it is similar to the first sentence. Use the opening words to start your sentence.

- 1 Marie Curie was a chemist and physicist.

Marie Curie worked \_\_\_\_\_

- 2 Before he painted the Mona Lisa, people didn't know that Leonardo da Vinci was a genius.

After he painted \_\_\_\_\_

- 3 King Henry VIII ordered Anne Boleyn to be executed.

King Henry VIII ordered the \_\_\_\_\_

- 4 My uncle smokes cigarettes and that's why he has health problems.

Because of \_\_\_\_\_

- 5 You lose weight when you eat foods that contain little sugar.

Foods that contain little sugar help \_\_\_\_\_

- 6 Sue's flat and mine are almost the same.

Sue's flat is \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Cloze

Read the text below and fill in the blanks with an appropriate word. Use one word for each blank.

## Shopping as Adventure

People usually shop because (1) \_\_\_\_\_ have to. What's in their shopping bags? A (2) \_\_\_\_\_ of milk, a loaf of (3) \_\_\_\_\_, some butter, perhaps a (4) \_\_\_\_\_ of chocolate. Boring! These (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the basic things we need to survive. We buy them and tick them off the list and then forget all about them. But shopping (6) \_\_\_\_\_ be really exciting if you try and change this attitude.

I belong to a club called 'Shopping as Adventure'. My friends and I (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the club two months ago because we were tired of the routine of everyday shopping. We wanted shopping to be fun! The rules of the club are as follows: you can buy whatever you like but you can't buy the same thing that you (8) \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday; you (9) \_\_\_\_\_ only spend the money you've got in your purse, and no more. The club members exchange emails (10) \_\_\_\_\_ the evening and compare their bargains. We also tell each other the best stories about our shopping. Some of these stories are really funny. A friend of

- (11) \_\_\_\_\_ got interested in fresh bananas but she bought one the day before, so she ended up buying a (12) \_\_\_\_\_ of matches instead!

## 3 Verb transformation

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

## Robin Hood

At the end of the 12th century, England (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (had) a good king. His name (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) Richard the Lion Heart. But when the king (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) the country for the Crusades, his brother John Lackland (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (take) the throne. It was a bad time for honest and hard-working people. John (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (order) the people of England to pay very high taxes. He also (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (become) a keen hunter and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (want) the forest only for himself.

At that time, there was a boy named Robin who (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in Lockley near Nottingham. The Sheriff of Nottingham was a cruel man and a friend of King John's.

When Robin Hood grew up, he (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (begin) his private war against the sheriff. With his group of friends, he (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (steal) the sheriff's tax money and (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (give) it to the poor.

Once Robin (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) hunting for deer in the king's forest. In the forest, he (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (kill) a guard in a fight. He had to run and hide. 'Sherwood Forest!' he thought. 'That's where I (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (hide)'. And that's the beginning of Robin Hood's story.

## 4 Word formation

Complete the sentences. Use the words in CAPITALS to form a verb, noun, adjective or adverb that fits the gap.

- My cousin Adam is a famous \_\_\_\_\_ (BIOLOGY).
- The story of Queen Elizabeth I shows that being a princess can be a \_\_\_\_\_ (DANGER) thing.
- Queen Mary \_\_\_\_\_ (ESCAPE) from Scotland to England in 1568.
- During a safari in Kenya last year, I saw the most \_\_\_\_\_ (FANTASY) animals.
- The thief looked around \_\_\_\_\_ (NERVOUS) as he walked away from the house.
- She \_\_\_\_\_ (SUCCESS) in winning the marathon in 2005.

## Speaking

### Photo description

Describe the picture. Answer the following questions.

- 1 Why do people usually visit places like this? What do they talk about in a place like this?
- 2 Do you like visiting historic places and why?



#### TIP

- Think about each question carefully. What is the aim of each question?
- Give your opinion about what is happening in the picture.
- Relate the picture to your own life.

#### USEFUL PHRASES

- In the picture ...; there is/are ...; in the middle of the picture ...; in the background/foreground ...; on the left/on the right ...
- Yes, I think they are because ...; No, I don't think so ...; They are/look bored/tired ...
- I love/like visiting ... because ...; Such places are always (exciting/fascinating) ...

## Reading

1 Read the text on the right. Match each paragraph of the text (1–6) with a headline (A–G) at the top of page 61. There is one extra headline.

#### TIP

The following are useful tips when doing matching reading exercises.

- Make sure you understand what you have to match, i.e. a headline with each paragraph of the text.
- Read each paragraph separately and then see if you can match it to a headline. Usually each headline contains information from that paragraph, often in summary form.
- If a headline doesn't seem to match any of the paragraphs, don't panic. Remember, there is one extra headline.
- If it is difficult for you to choose a headline, trust your intuition. Don't leave any questions unanswered.

### Up in the Air

#### Call the police! It's BASE jumping

1 There are some ordinary sports which almost everybody can learn, like snowboarding or skating. They are also perhaps not very risky. But BASE jumping is one of the extreme sports and it is very dangerous. You jump off a building or a bridge with a parachute. You usually open your parachute as late as possible.

2 BASE jumping began at El Capitan, a 915-metre-high mountain in Yosemite, an American park. In 1978 some people jumped from the mountain with parachutes. People jump there today, too. However, a very popular form of this extreme sport today is jumping not from the mountains in the country but from tall buildings in cities.

3 Some people BASE jump from 76-metre buildings. That isn't very high! You have to open your parachute very quickly after you jump. You have to fall well and watch the ground. Are there people there? Turn your parachute and move away. Quickly – you don't have much time. And are the police there?

4

Just because BASE jumping is so dangerous, in the US the police put BASE jumpers in prison. John Vincent of New Orleans jumped from a tall building in St. Louis. The police were there when he came down. He went to prison for ninety days after the jump. But go to France, Norway or Brazil and you can jump without any problems.

5

BASE jumping today is not just a hobby, but an organisation with special offers and bonuses for its members. It started in 1981 when Phil Smith and Jean Boenisch founded the US BASE Association. Do you want to become a member? It's easy: you have to do 100 skydives and then you get a BASE number. Phil Smith of Houston, Texas is BASE 1.

6

People say they do BASE jumping because the world is beautiful when you see it from above. And because it's dangerous. About one person each year dies after a jump. BASE jumper Rick Harrison broke his legs on a jump. He shows you his legs and tells you about it. Then he finds a building or a bridge and jumps again!

(adapted from: Michael Dean, Extreme Sports, Penguin Readers)



- ☐ A How to do a good BASE jump?     ☐ D Why does BASE jumping kill so many people every year?     ☐ F Where did it all start?  
☐ B How to join the official BASE organisation?     ☐ E Why do people like BASE jumping?     ☐ G Which country is not good for BASE jumping?  
☐ C What is BASE jumping?

**2** The story below is not in the correct order. Read the different parts of the legend about King Arthur (*How Arthur Became King*). Put the parts (A-G) in the correct order to make a logical story. Write your answers in the table.

### TIP

The following are useful tips when doing text sequencing reading exercises.

- Find the first part of the story. The first part introduces the story and sets the scene for what is to happen next. Pay attention to the title of the story, if there is one, because it may tell you what the story is about.
- Then try to find the last part of the story. This usually summarises the story but it can also refer to the title.

- Read the parts that are left. Try to find the connection between them. The last two or three sentences in one paragraph usually have a connection to the first two or three sentences in the following paragraph.
- When you find the connection between the parts, put them in the correct order. Pay attention to the linking words and phrases like this/that, then ..., next ....
- Finally, read the whole story. If you have problems with placing any part, try to guess where it fits.

**A** Arthur left Sir Kay and quickly went to the church. There were no longer any knights outside by the stone because they were at the tournament. Arthur climbed down from his horse and went to the stone. He did not read the words on the stone. He took the sword in his hand and pulled. It came out of the stone easily. He ran back to his horse with the sword.

**C** Every knight tried to pull the sword out of the stone. Nobody could do it – the sword did not come out. The knights pulled and pulled but they could not move the sword. Ten knights stayed and guarded the sword. Others went to invite all the great men in the country to London for a tournament. They hoped one of those strong men could pull out the sword.

**E** Then they went to the knights and told them everything. The knights were angry. They did not think that Arthur was really the king. So Merlin called all of them to the stone. Arthur put the sword back into the stone. As the knights watched, he pulled it out easily. Then the knights believed. Everybody shouted, 'Arthur is our king! Arthur is our king!'

**G** Sir Ector, the king, came to the tournament with his two sons, Sir Kay and young Arthur. Arthur was sixteen years old. The young men wanted to fight with the other knights but Sir Kay did not have a sword. Arthur was a kind young man. He wanted to help his brother. 'There is a sword in a stone outside a church. I saw it on the way here,' he said. 'I can go and get it for you.'

**B** The sword came out as easily as a knife out of butter. Sir Ector saw this and took Arthur's hand. 'You are my king,' he said. Arthur did not understand. What did his father mean? 'Arthur,' Sir Ector said slowly, 'I love you very much but I am not really your father. Merlin, the famous man of magic, brought you to me when you were a small child.'

**D** Some minutes later, he met Sir Kay and Sir Ector again, and he showed them the sword. 'Where did that come from?', Sir Ector asked. He knew about the words on the stone. They went back to the place outside the church, and Sir Ector put the sword in the stone again. 'Now pull it out,' he said to Arthur. Arthur pulled it out.

**F** One day, when Arthur was a young man, Merlin and all the knights went to London. They met in a large church. When they came outside, they saw something strange in front of the church. It was a very big stone with a great sword in it. The sun shone on the sword and it looked very strong. On the stone were the words: 'Only the king can take the sword from the stone.'

1	2	3	4	5	6	7

## Listening

(Recording SB page 41, Module 5, Warm-up, Exercise 3)

Listen to four people talking about important moments in human history. Choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D). You will hear the recording twice.

### TIP

The following are useful tips when doing multiple choice listening exercises.

- Before you listen to the recording, read all the questions and answers.
- When the recording starts, concentrate on listening. In tests of this type, the questions are in the same order as the people talking on the recording.
- Make notes of possible answers while listening for the first time. Then read the questions and the answers and choose the most appropriate one.
- Be careful! Some of the sentences in your exercise may be similar to those in the recording. This doesn't mean they are the answers to your questions. Often the right answers are worded in a different way.
- When you listen for the second time, check your answers. Remember! Don't leave any questions unanswered.

1 The first person mentions ... important date(s).

- A three
- B two
- C four
- D one

2 The second person chooses the Renaissance because

- A it was a very interesting period.
- B it was more important than the discovery of America.
- C she loves stories of great explorers.
- D Columbus is her favourite historical figure.

3 The third person first mentions a date

- A in the 17th century.
- B nearly one hundred years ago.
- C in the middle of the 19th century.
- D over four hundred years ago.

4 One of the dates given by the fourth speaker has something to do with

- A a four-year war.
- B a cheap gadget.
- C a famous soldier.
- D a city in America.

## Writing

### 1 Short text

You are leaving your house for a short period of time. Your English friend is going to stay in your house for that time. You have to give him/her some important information about using your house. Write a short note in which you:

- Explain why you are giving her/him the information.
- Say what she/he can do in your house.
- Say what she/he can't do in your house.
- Tell her/him you hope he/she will enjoy the stay.

### TIP

- A note is a very short text in which we often don't use full sentences.
- Remember to use all the information in the instructions.

### USEFUL PHRASES

Hi; Just one thing before I go ... ; You can always ... ;  
Please feel free to ... ; Do ... ; Remember not to ... ;  
Don't ... ; Have a nice stay ...

### 2 Long text

In the daily newspaper you read an advert about a language camp being organised in England. Write an application letter to go to the language camp.

- Start your letter in an appropriate way and say why you are writing.
- Write a few sentences about yourself.
- Give a few reasons why you want to go on the camp.
- Finish your letter in an appropriate way.

### TIP

- An application letter is a formal letter.
- You must write it in full sentences and a formal style.
- Make sure you are using phrases (see below) that are typical of this type of writing.
- Remember to use no more than 120–150 words.

### USEFUL PHRASES

- Dear Sir or Madam; I am writing to apply for a place at the language camp which ...
- I am ... years old; I started learning English (in/when) ... ; I am hard-working/responsible/...
- I hope I am the right candidate for this camp because ... ; I am good at languages/I like studying English/ I want to improve my English because ...
- Thank you for considering my application; Yours faithfully

# Key Words List

## MODULE 8 SPORT

### sports and games

athletics, badminton, basketball, climbing, cricket, cycling, diving, fishing, flying, football, Formula 1, golf, hang gliding, hockey, horse racing, ice hockey, ice skating, motor racing, parachuting, rock climbing, sailing, skiing, squash, surfing, swimming, table tennis, tennis, volleyball, water skiing, windsurfing

### verbs

bounce, catch, hit, kick, roll, run, score, throw

### other

championship, final, game, match, semi-final

### sports equipment

ball, bat, cap, club, flippers, glove, helmet, mask, puck, racket, snorkel, stick

### sports people

athlete, champion, footballer, goalkeeper, player, runner

### adverbs

angrily, badly, basically, brilliantly, calmly, cleverly, dangerously, desperately, easily, famously, fantastically, happily, mechanically, nervously, scientifically, slowly, successfully, well

### prepositions

above (the clouds), across (the snow), off (the board), in (his car), into (the water), on (the grass), over (the net), on (the line), to (the next player), up (the mountain), with (the bat)

### linking

after, before, during

### quantity

a lot of, any, some

### 1 Guess the sport or game.

- 1 You have to hit a small white ball into a hole in the ground.
- 2 You can't allow the ball to touch your hand.
- 3 You don't have to know how to swim when you stand by the river.
- 4 You can wear colourful clothes but not at Wimbledon.
- 5 You have to wear boots with metal parts on the ice.
- 6 You have to drive the car very fast.
- 7 You have to hit a puck with your stick.
- 8 You have to hit the ball over the net with your hands.



## Module Diary

1 Look at the lessons from Module 8 in your coursebook. Tick the boxes that are true for you.

	easy	OK	difficult
22 Crazy sports			
23 Sport in the UK			
24 Communication Workshop			

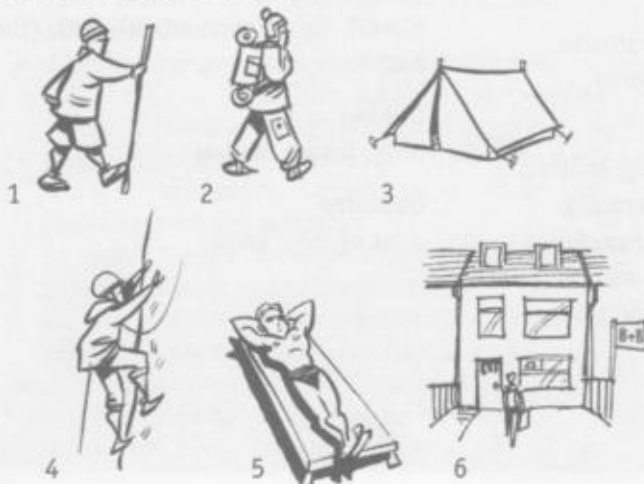
- 1 Which is your favourite lesson? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Are *can/can't*, *have to/don't have to* difficult for you? Y N
- 3 How often do you use the Mini-dictionary?  
Never Sometimes Often Very often



# 9 Holidays

## Warm-up

1 Write the names of the activities. Look at page 18 in the Mini-dictionary.



- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| 1 _____ | 6 _____  |
| 2 _____ | 7 _____  |
| 3 _____ | 8 _____  |
| 4 _____ | 9 _____  |
| 5 _____ | 10 _____ |

2 Choose three activities you like and say why. Then, choose three you don't like and say why.

- 1 I like \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I don't like \_\_\_\_\_

3 Where do you like to stay when you are on holiday? Explain why.

## 25 GRAMMAR

### 1 ★ Affirmative forms

Write the verbs in the Present Continuous. Then match them to the pictures (a-h).

Jim: I've got my holiday photos, Sue. Look! This is me in Croatia. I (1) am windsurfing (windsurf) ☐ b. And this is a photo of my parents. They (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (sunbathe) by the pool ☐.

Sue: Who's this?

Jim: That's Dave. He (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (read) a magazine ☐. And here's a photo of me and my sister. We (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) in a café ☐. And this is a photo of my mother. She (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) some postcards ☐. Here's another photo of me. I (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (play) volleyball on the beach ☐. And this is my sister. She (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) a very large ice cream ☐.

Sue: Who is this person?

Jim: That's you, Sue. You (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep) ☐. I took that photo after Emma's birthday party last week!





**2 ★ Negative forms**

Rewrite these sentences in the negative form of the Present Continuous.

- 1 He's sitting in the sun.

He isn't sitting in the sun.

- 2 You are talking a lot.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 3 She is playing volleyball.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 4 We are staying in a hotel.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 5 I am making coffee.

\_\_\_\_\_

**3 ★ Wh- questions**

Use the cues to write questions in the Present Continuous.

- 1 What/you/do with my postcards?

What are you doing with my postcards?

- 2 Why/we/talk about them?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 3 Why/I/do this?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 4 Who/you/think about right now?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 5 How many people/stay with you at the moment?

\_\_\_\_\_

**4 ★ Yes/No questions**

Use the cues to write questions in the Present Continuous and short answers.

- 1 you/do your homework? ✓

Are you doing your homework? Yes, I am.

- 2 Katie and Liza/help in the shop? ✗

\_\_\_\_\_

- 3 we/stand at the right bus stop? ✓

\_\_\_\_\_

- 4 I/sit in your place? ✗

\_\_\_\_\_

- 5 you/think about your girlfriend? ✓

\_\_\_\_\_

**5 ★ ★ Present Continuous: all forms**

Write the verbs in the Present Continuous.

Hi Georgie,

I (1) am having (have) a fantastic time in Ireland. I'm with my friend Josie and we (2) are staying (stay) in a little white house near the beach. It (3) isn't raining (not rain) for once and I (4) am writing (write) this at a table in the garden. I (5) am wearing (wear) my swimming costume and I think I (6) am getting (get) quite brown. Josie (7) isn't sitting (not sit) outside because she (8) is making (make) our lunch. Great! I (9) am feeling (feel) really hungry. Josie's brother is still at the beach. He (10) isn't surfing (surf), I think. Or perhaps he (11) is playing (play) volleyball with all his friends. (12) are you working (you/work) hard at the moment? I'm not! I (13) am not thinking (not think) about exams and I (14) am not doing (not do) any revision. Josie and I (15) are not reading (not read) any of the books on the reading list for next term! (16) are your cousins staying (your cousins/stay) with you at the moment? (17) is your brother having (your brother/have) a good time in Peru? I have to stop now. Josie (18) is calling (call) me. Write soon!

Love,  
Claudia

**Word Corner**

Write the correct word in each gap.

beautiful, delicious, fascinating, friendly, ~~great~~, historic

- 1 We had a great holiday!

- 2 The food was delicious.

- 3 The people were really friendly.

- 4 The legends and stories in that part of the world are historic.

- 5 The islands along the coast are really beautiful.

- 6 We enjoyed seeing all the fascinating buildings.

## 26 COMMUNICATION

### 1 At the hotel

These people are talking at the Royal Hotel. Complete the dialogues below with the correct phrases from the box.

~~Excuse me~~

Have you got a single room or a double room?

Can you complete this form, please?

How long are you here for?

forty pounds a night

Here's your key.

Three nights.

Go down this corridor

IN THE CORRIDOR ...

Mr Lewis: (1) Excuse me, is there a phone here?

Mrs Thomson: Yes, there's one near reception.

(2) \_\_\_\_\_, turn left and it's on your right.

AT THE SWIMMING POOL ...

Jo: (3) \_\_\_\_\_?

Nur: A week and then we go back to Istanbul. And you?

Jo: (4) \_\_\_\_\_. What's your room like? Mine's very small.

Nur: My room is OK. (5) \_\_\_\_\_?

Jo: Single. I'm here with my friend, Jackie. She's got a single room, too.

Nur: Some of the single rooms are small here.

Jo: Yes, and they cost a lot of money, (6) \_\_\_\_\_.

AT THE HOTEL RECEPTION ...

Mr Boyd: Good morning. Mr and Mrs Boyd. We're here for four nights.

Receptionist: Yes, sir. (7) \_\_\_\_\_?

Mr Boyd: OK.

Receptionist: Thank you. (8) \_\_\_\_\_. Room 251.

### 2 Do the words rhyme?

- |                 |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| 1 through threw | 6 money funny       |
| 2 nut put       | 7 height light      |
| 3 whose who's   | 8 fruit boot        |
| 4 watch catch   | 9 daughter laughter |
| 5 cheese please | 10 passed past      |

### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct word.

~~noisy~~, terrible, dirty, expensive, unfriendly

- A: There wasn't much noise at the hotel.  
B: Yes, there was. It was noisy.
- A: The people at the campsite were friendly.  
B: No, they weren't. They were \_\_\_\_\_.
- A: We paid £40 a night at the hotel. That's not a lot.  
B: Yes, it is! £40 a night is \_\_\_\_\_ for me!
- A: The weather was OK.  
B: It wasn't OK. The weather was \_\_\_\_\_.
- A: The sea was polluted.  
B: Yes, and the swimming pool was \_\_\_\_\_, too.



## Skills Corner

### Writing – a postcard

Write a holiday postcard to a friend. Write about:

- where you're spending your holiday,
- where you're staying and what you're doing,
- who you're spending your time with,
- how you spent last night.

## 27 FOCUS ON WRITING

### 1 Punctuation

Write these addresses again in your notebook with capital letters and commas.

- 1 the royal hotel/tudor park/london nw3 5re/england
- 2 24 calton road/edinburgh ed2 5jh/scotland
- 3 the old beach house/newcastle  
avenue/buxton/derbyshire/sk17 6eq/england
- 4 4041 west 154th street/the bronx/new york/usa
- 5 258 queen street/autea square/auckland/north  
island/new zealand

### 2 Spelling

We double final consonants before *-ing*, when there is *one* consonant after *one* vowel.

**Example:** stop – stopping (one consonant, one vowel)

But: camp – camping (two consonants, one vowel)

eat – eating (two vowels, one consonant)

Write these words with the correct *-ing* form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 The train is (stop) \_\_\_\_\_ here for five minutes.
- 2 The Malones are (trek) \_\_\_\_\_ in the mountains.
- 3 John is (swim) \_\_\_\_\_ in the new pool.
- 4 They are (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ for him in the hotel reception.
- 5 Are you (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ that film?
- 6 We are (sail) \_\_\_\_\_ round the islands.
- 7 I'm (put) \_\_\_\_\_ the room key on the table, OK?
- 8 Jean goes (snorkel) \_\_\_\_\_ every afternoon.

### 3 Linking with *and*, *also* and *too*

*Also* and *too* mean the same as *and*.

*Also* comes in the second sentence, before the verb but after *can* and *to be*.

*Too* comes at the end of the second sentence.

Examples: Grandfather **and** Robert were in the garden.

Grandfather likes apples. He **also** likes cherries.

Grandfather was in the garden. Robert **was also** there.

Grandfather was in the garden, Robert was there, **too**.

Put the words in brackets in the correct order and write the sentences with full stops.

- 1 We usually go on holiday to Hungary.  
(go/Our/every/too/friends/there/year,)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The receptionist was unfriendly.  
(were/The/rude/waiters/also)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 (and/The hotel/next/beach/the/its gardens/  
were/to)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 You can see the sea from my room.  
(also/You/Royal/can/the/see/Hotel)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 You can buy souvenirs at the hotel.  
(them/in/You/can/too/buy/town,/the)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Budapest is one of my favourite cities.  
(also/it/a/My/sister/likes/lot)  
\_\_\_\_\_

**4 Choose the correct verb for each gap and write it in the Present Continuous.**

teach, stay, eat, look, take, sit, have, drink, not/listen

We're on holiday in Turkey. We (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in Kalkan, a beautiful town on the coast. Right now I (2) \_\_\_\_\_ in a café and I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ at the sea. I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ a glass of orange juice. My brother is talking to two American girls at the next table but the girls (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to him! My parents (6) \_\_\_\_\_ photos of the fishing boats. (7) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ a nice time with your uncle in California? (8) \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ you to windsurf? (9) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of pizza and hamburgers?

**5 Use the notes to write a similar postcard in your notebook.**

in Spain – Gaucin, village in the mountains –  
at the trees – lemonade – Spanish girls – of the church  
– with your friend in Italy? – you to cook? –  
a lot of pasta and pizza?

# Review 9

## GRAMMAR

**1 Complete the sentences with the correct verb in the Present Continuous.**

wear, write, stay, sleep, paint, make, listen

- 1 Ssh! We \_\_\_\_\_ to a really interesting programme on the radio.
- 2 I \_\_\_\_\_ an email to my friend in Australia right now.
- 3 I \_\_\_\_\_ the supper because my mother's very tired.
- 4 My best friend \_\_\_\_\_ with us for a week.
- 5 Charlie and I \_\_\_\_\_ a big picture on our bedroom wall at the moment.
- 6 Rosie's eyes are shut. I think she \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 You \_\_\_\_\_ that fantastic hat again!

**2 Write the verbs in the negative form of the Present Continuous.**

- 1 We \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a very good time.
- 2 She \_\_\_\_\_ (talk) to us.
- 3 I \_\_\_\_\_ (play) very well today.
- 4 Alice and Amy \_\_\_\_\_ (use) the car at the moment.
- 5 You \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) your dinner.

**3 Write questions in the Present Continuous.**

- 1 we/look at the right page?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 you/read my letter?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Why/she/wear those gloves?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 What/he/write in his notebook?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I/talk a lot?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Whose camera/you use?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## VOCABULARY

**4 Choose from the adjectives in the box to fill the gaps.**

delicious, excellent, famous, fantastic, fascinating, interesting

The Forum is a stunning modern building in the centre of Norwich, England. The huge front is made of glass with an (1) \_\_\_\_\_ view down wide stone steps to the city's (2) \_\_\_\_\_ outdoor market. The Forum contains a (3) \_\_\_\_\_ library, a coffee bar, and a restaurant that serves (4) \_\_\_\_\_ food. The top attraction in the building is Origins – a (5) \_\_\_\_\_ multi-media journey through the history of this area of eastern England. It is part museum, part cinema and part computer games. You can discover many (6) \_\_\_\_\_ facts. Did you know that Norwich was the capital of England before London?

forum

**Entrance:** free

**Open:** 9 a.m. – 6 p.m. every day

**Evenings:** open for special events

Babies and children welcome

No dogs allowed

**Library:** members only



**5 Look at the brochure and answer the questions.**

- 1 How much does it cost to go in?
- 2 Can all the family go in?
- 3 Can everyone use the library?
- 4 Is the building open in the evening?
- 5 When can I visit?



# Key Words List

## MODULE 9 HOLIDAYS

### holidays

adventure, backpacking, beach, camping, safari, sightseeing, walking

### places

on the beach/coast, in the city/forest/mountains/rainforest, at the airport

### places to stay

apartment, bed and breakfast (B&B), campsite, caravan park, hostel, hotel

### information

brochure, guidebook, magazine

### adjectives

brilliant, delicious, enormous, excellent, fantastic, fascinating, friendly, funny, great, lovely, magnificent, polite, stunning, wonderful, crowded, dirty, disgusting, expensive, freezing, horrible, nasty, noisy, polluted, rude, terrible, unfriendly, unpleasant, well

### position

above, behind, below, near, next to, opposite; (on) the left/right, downstairs/upstairs

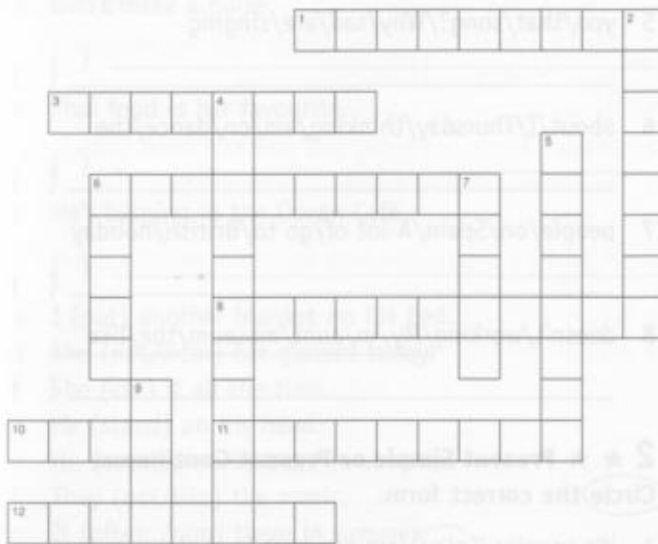
### asking for/giving directions

Where is ... ? Go (along/through .../left/right)

### in a hotel

be (= cost) extra, a double/single room, key, with a bath/shower, with/without breakfast

## 1 Complete the crossword



### Across

- 1 tasting very good
- 3 very big
- 6 tasting very bad
- 8 very interesting
- 10 not polite
- 11 costing a lot of money
- 12 having a lot of dirt or chemicals

### Down

- 2 very good to look at
- 4 very beautiful to look at
- 5 very unpleasant
- 6 not clean
- 7 very good
- 9 not ill

## Module Diary

1 Look at the lessons from Module 9 in your coursebook. Tick the boxes that are true for you.

	easy	OK	difficult
25 Fantastic time			
26 Horrible time			
27 Communication Workshop			

- 1 Which is your favourite lesson? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Is the Present Continuous difficult for you?  
Y N
- 3 How often do you use the Mini-dictionary?  
Never Sometimes Often Very often



# 10 Cultures

## Warm-up



1

2



3



4



### 1 Which country does each photo come from?

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Now say which continent the countries are in.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_

## 28 GRAMMAR

### 1 ★ Present Simple or Present Continuous?

Put the words in the correct order and write the sentences. Then write PS (Present Simple) or PC (Present Continuous) next to each sentence.

- 1 comes/India/This/from/necklace  
This necklace comes from India. (PS)
- 2 birthday/making/is/cake/for/Luisa/a/her mother's  
\_\_\_\_\_ ( )
- 3 winter?/New York/it/snow/Does/in/in  
\_\_\_\_\_ ( )
- 4 playing/Marina/today/isn't/well/very  
\_\_\_\_\_ ( )
- 5 you/that/song?/Why/sad/are/singing  
\_\_\_\_\_ ( )
- 6 about/I/Thursday/thinking/am/on/dance/the  
\_\_\_\_\_ ( )
- 7 people/on/Spain/A lot of/go to/British/holiday  
\_\_\_\_\_ ( )
- 8 doesn't/working/My/in/aunt/museum/the/like  
\_\_\_\_\_ ( )

### 2 ★ ★ Present Simple or Present Continuous

Circle the correct form.

- 1 We usually ((play)/are playing) in a group at the weekend.
- 2 'What's that music?' 'My sister (plays/is playing) her new CD of Indian music.'
- 3 (Do you wear/Are you wearing) a uniform at your school?
- 4 British people (eat/are eating) a lot of Indian and Chinese food.
- 5 This summer camp is boring and I (don't have/am not having) a very nice time.
- 6 Who (makes/is making) that terrible noise? Please be quiet!
- 7 Usually we (don't go/aren't going) swimming in spring. The water can be very cold.

### 3 ★ ★ Using the Present Simple and Present Continuous

Match the pairs of sentences and put the second sentence in the correct tense: Present Simple or Present Continuous.

- 1 She can't read the board.  
(b) She isn't wearing her glasses today.
- 2 They aren't dancing.  
( ) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 He doesn't need the umbrella.  
( ) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Take a raincoat to Scotland.  
( ) \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Tim was cold last night.  
( ) \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Look at Alex in this photo.  
( ) \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Don't make a noise.  
( ) \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Thai food is her favourite.  
( ) \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 He's helping in the Ocean Café.  
( ) \_\_\_\_\_
- a I (put) another blanket on his bed.
- b ~~She (not/wear) her glasses today.~~
- c She (eat) it all the time.
- d He (stand) on his head.
- e He (usually/work) there in summer.
- f They (not/like) the music.
- g It (often /rain) there in summer.
- h My baby brother (sleep).
- i It (not/rain) at the moment.

### 4 ★ ★ Present Simple and Present Continuous

Put the verbs in the correct tense: Present Simple or Present Continuous.

Every year, about 2 million people (1) enjoy (enjoy) the Notting Hill Carnival in west London. The carnival always (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (take) place on the last weekend in August. It (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (begin) on Saturday and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (end) on Monday. During those three days, bands (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (play) Caribbean music and lorries (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (carry) dancers down the narrow streets. Thousands of people (7) \_\_\_\_\_



(follow) the lorries and (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (dance) behind them.

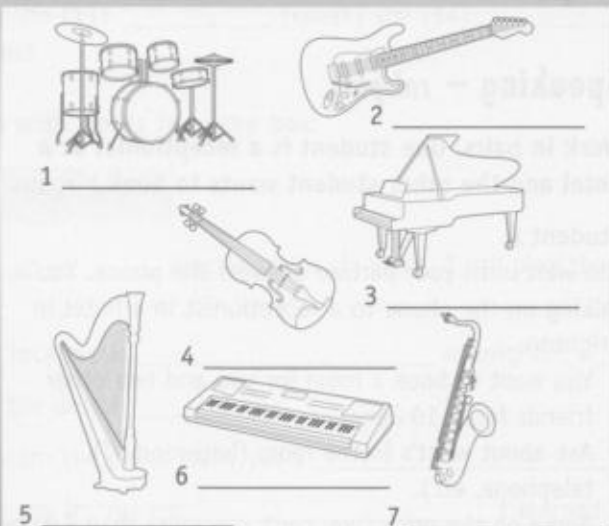
Meilin Sancho is one of the costume makers for the carnival. She told *Opportunities*, 'At the moment I'm very busy. I (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (make) butterfly costumes for twenty-five children.' In the photo, one of the children (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (try) on her butterfly costume and Meilin (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (help) her with her mask.

Meilin (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (make) costumes for carnival every year. She (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (not get) any money for it. 'I (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (do) it every year because I (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (enjoy) it,' she told *Opportunities*. 'I (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (like) making costumes. I (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (not make) them to get rich.'

## Word Corner

Match the words to the pictures.

drums, guitar, harp, keyboard, piano, saxophone, violin



## 29 COMMUNICATION

### 1 Being polite

Anita is staying with her pen friend, Ann Robinson, in London. Correct what Anita says to make it more polite. Use the words and phrases in the box.

please (x3), I'd like, Thank you, Excuse me, I'm afraid

**Ann:** Tea or coffee, Anita?

**Anita:** ~~Tea.~~ (1) Tea,  
please.



**Mr Robinson:** This is

cottage pie, Anita.

It's meat and vegetables  
with potatoes on top.

**Anita:** ~~I don't eat meat.~~

(2) \_\_\_\_\_

I don't eat meat.



**Anita:** ~~Can I have some fruit juice?~~

(3) \_\_\_\_\_. Can I have some fruit juice,

(4) \_\_\_\_\_?

**Mrs Robinson:** Yes, of

course. There's some in  
the fridge.



**Mrs Robinson:** ... and for you, Anita?

**Anita:** ~~I want some of that apple pie.~~

(5) \_\_\_\_\_ some of that apple pie,

(6) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Mrs Robinson:** Of course,

here you are.

**Anita:** OK. (7) \_\_\_\_\_.



### 2 Choose the correct word to fill the gaps.

- We are travelling through Egypt \_\_\_\_\_ the moment.  
a in b at c by
- The London Eye is \_\_\_\_\_ the centre of London.  
a on b in c at
- I'm interested \_\_\_\_\_ the traditional music of Africa.  
a in b of c by
- There's a great band playing live \_\_\_\_\_ stage next weekend.  
a at b of c on
- The band combines modern \_\_\_\_\_ traditional instruments.  
a with b to c or
- They played until just \_\_\_\_\_ eleven o'clock.  
a as b to c after

### 3 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- I'm getting her new CD for my birthday – touch salt.
- Throw a rabbit's foot over your left shoulder and make a wish.
- To see black salt brings good luck in Britain.
- Broken wood can bring bad luck for seven years.
- Friday the 13th is a lucky day in Britain.
- A black cat brings good luck in every country.
- A rabbit's foot is not very lucky for you.

## Skills Corner

### Speaking – roleplay

Work in pairs. One student is a receptionist at a hotel and the other student wants to book a room.

#### Student A

You wait until your partner answers the phone. You're talking on the phone to a receptionist in a hotel in Brighton.

- You want to book a room for you and two other friends for 1–10 June.
- Ask about what's in the room (bathroom, TV, telephone, etc).
- Agree on the price (you can't pay more than £40 per person)

#### Student B

You start by answering the phone. You are a receptionist in a hotel in Brighton.

- You have only single and double rooms.
- All your rooms have private bathrooms, TV and telephones.
- A single room is £60 and a double room is £80 (£40 per person).



## 30 FOCUS ON WRITING

### 1 Match the words.

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| 1 musical  | beef       |
| 2 birth    | card       |
| 3 prawn    | soup       |
| 4 credit   | course     |
| 5 main     | instrument |
| 6 roast    | stereo     |
| 7 apple    | cocktail   |
| 8 personal | place      |
| 9 fruit    | pie        |
| 10 tomato  | salad      |

### 2 Use the correct linking word to fill the gaps.

also, and, and now, and then, but, however, too, when

- We hope to visit the Science Museum \_\_\_\_\_ the National Gallery in London.
- We tried to get into the play \_\_\_\_\_ there were no tickets left.
- \_\_\_\_\_, we managed to see *The Lion King* the next day.
- We spent the afternoon at Kew Gardens \_\_\_\_\_ we went to a Chinese restaurant.
- They were eating sandwiches \_\_\_\_\_ we arrived.
- We travelled on the tube \_\_\_\_\_ we are walking over Westminster Bridge.
- We went to the concert and we \_\_\_\_\_ bought their new CD.
- Monika bought a T-shirt, \_\_\_\_\_.

### 3 Fill in the missing letters.

- |             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1 throug__  | 6 a__roplane  |
| 2 bus__ness | 7 a__dience   |
| 3 tomato__s | 8 cap__tal    |
| 4 forei__n  | 9 dialog__e   |
| 5 musi__ian | 10 spag__etti |

### 4 Complete the text with the correct tense of the verbs in brackets.



- (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (imagine) the scene: It (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) summer in London. The sun (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (shine), a young girl (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) through Hyde Park. She (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a pleasant conversation with her friend who (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (push) her bike beside her. Suddenly, a huge number of birds (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (fly) across the sky above them. The girls (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) and (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (look up). One (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (say), 'A group of birds (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) my eyes and (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) me the day to my surprise! But as she (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (speak) she (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) into a tree!

### 5 Fill the gaps with words from the box.

after, ago, before, now, until

- \_\_\_\_\_ practising for six years, I can play the cello well.
- They played rock music \_\_\_\_\_ midnight.
- I don't play the drums \_\_\_\_\_.
- I began to learn the piano many years \_\_\_\_\_.
- I didn't play any instrument \_\_\_\_\_ I learned the trumpet.

# Review 10

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Choose the correct verb in each sentence.

- 1 (Does it rain/Is it raining) a lot in Ireland in the summer?
- 2 He (isn't playing/doesn't play) very well today.
- 3 My parents always (are going/go) to bed early.
- 4 Please be quiet. You (are making/make) a terrible noise and I (am trying/try) to sleep.
- 5 She usually (is telling/tells) me all her problems.
- 6 Please turn the music down! I (am doing/do) a very difficult maths problem.
- 7 We (aren't wearing/don't wear) the right clothes at the moment. We can't go for a run.
- 8 Why (are you reading/do you read) that letter? It's Lucy's, not yours.
- 9 People (aren't wearing/don't wear) hats very often to school.

### 2 Put the verbs in the Present Simple or Present Continuous.

Dear Melanie,

I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) in Scotland with my uncle and aunt. I (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a good time but the weather isn't very good. It (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (not/rain) at the moment but it (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) nearly every day. My aunt Liz is a doctor. She (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (start) work very early in the morning and (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (get) home late. My uncle Andy is a musician. He (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (write) music for films. His studio is in the house and he (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (do) all his work at home. Liz (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (not/do) any housework. Andy always (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) all the food and (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (cook) the meals. Right now he (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (make) three pizzas and a chocolate cake. We all (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) a lot in this house! I (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (not/help) him in the kitchen today because he (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (not/want) any help. I (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) at the kitchen table and I (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) a nice cup of hot chocolate.

(18) \_\_\_\_\_ (you/read) all those biology books for next term? (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (your brother/work) hard for his exams? What (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (you/think) of Celia's new boyfriend?

Write to me!

Love,  
Craig

## VOCABULARY

### 3 Write the silent letters in the words.

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 1 ca__mly   | 6 forei__n |
| 2 bisc__it  | 7 __onest  |
| 3 clim__ing | 8 r__ythm  |
| 4 i__land   | 9 i__on    |
| 5 ans__er   | 10 __now   |

### 4 Read these explanations of dreams.



A dream of riding a bike is a sign of doing well at your studies.

A dream of eating ice cream is a sign of happiness.

A dream of having bad teeth is a sign that you told a lie.

A dream of running is a sign of changes in your life.

### Now write your own ideas of what these dreams mean.

Dreaming about:

- 1 falling a long way down
- 2 spiders
- 3 washing your hands
- 4 beautiful flowers

# Key Words List

## MODULE 10 CULTURES

### countries/nationalities

Argentina/Argentinian,  
Australia/Australian, Brazil/Brazilian,  
Britain/British, Canada/Canadian,  
Denmark/Danish, Egypt/Egyptian,  
France/French, the Netherlands or  
Holland/Dutch, Hungary/Hungarian,  
India/Indian, Ireland/Irish,  
Japan/Japanese, Kenya/Kenyan,  
Mali/Malian, Peru/Peruvian,  
Poland/Polish, Russia/Russian,  
Scotland/Scots, Spain/Spanish,  
Turkey/Turkish, Ukraine/Ukrainian,  
The United States/American,  
Uruguay/Uruguayan, Wales/Welsh

### continents/adjective

Africa/African, America/American,  
Asia/Asian, Europe/European

### directions

east/eastern, north/northern,  
northeast, northwest,  
south/southern, southeast,  
southwest, west/western

### food in England

starter: prawn cocktail,  
(chicken/mushroom/tomato) soup  
main course: fish/steak and chips,  
omelette, roast beef/chicken, salad,  
sandwich, spaghetti bolognaise,

steak, tuna salad

dessert: apple pie,  
(birthday/chocolate) cake, cream,  
fruit salad, ice cream, lemon sorbet

### places to eat

café, cafeteria, restaurant

### musical instruments

cello, drums, flute, guitar, harp,  
keyboards, piano, saxophone,  
synthesiser, trumpet, violin

### superstitions

be a sign of, bring bad/good luck,  
lucky/unlucky

### 1 Write words that sound like these letters.

- |     |     |
|-----|-----|
| 1 B | 5 R |
| 2 C | 6 T |
| 3 I | 7 U |
| 4 Q | 8 Y |

### 2 Write this text message in complete sentences.



### 3 How many words can find in the oval?

outside, dessert, together, river, roast, stage, general, way, stadium, meal, luck, outside

## Module Diary

1 Look at the lessons from Module 10 in your coursebook. Tick the boxes that are true for you.

	easy	OK	difficult
28 Mail music			
29 Life in the UK			
30 Communication Workshop			

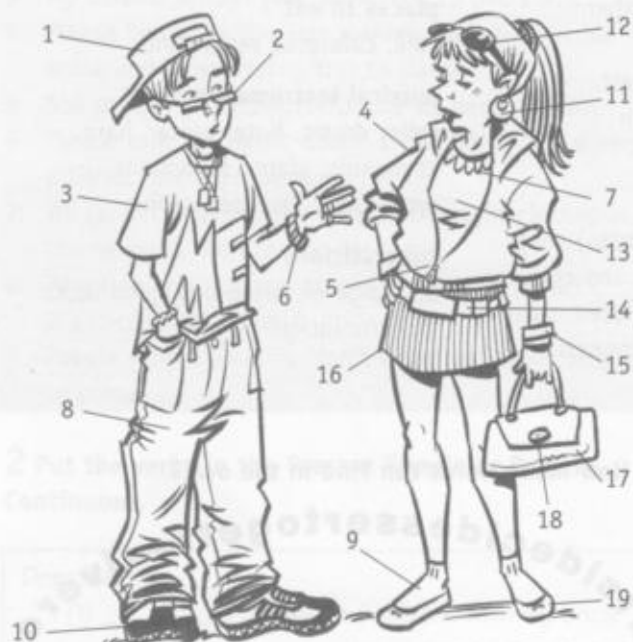
- Which is your favourite lesson? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you know when to use the Present Simple and when to use the Present Continuous?  
Y N
- How often do you use the Mini-dictionary?  
Never Sometimes Often Very often



# 11 Image

## Warm-up

1 Name the numbered parts.



2 Write things you can wear in these materials.

cotton	leather	metal	nylon	plastic

## 31 GRAMMAR

### 1 ★ Forms

Write each adjective with its comparative form in the correct part of the table:

fashionable, bad, big, ~~dark~~, healthy, expensive, funny, good, comfortable, quiet, strange, happy, brave, short, fit, thin, wide

		Adjective	Comparative
1	Add -er	dark	darker
2	Add -r		
3	Double the final consonant and add -er		
4	Drop -y and add -ier		
5	Put the word <i>more</i> in front		
6	Irregular comparatives		

### 2 ★ Using comparative adjectives in questions and answers

Complete the questions with comparative adjectives. Then write answers in your notebooks. Check your answers at the bottom of the page.

## The Great Comparatives Quiz



1 Which mountain is higher: Mont Blanc or Everest? (high)



2 Which game is older: tennis or basketball? (old)



3 Which desert is bigger: the Kalahari or the Sahara? (big)



4 Which river is longer: the Amazon or the Danube? (long)



5 Which country is smaller: Slovakia or Slovenia? (small)



6 Which are faster: cheetahs or tigers? (fast)



7 Which invention is newer: the computer or the mobile phone? (new)

### Answers

- 1 Everest
- 2 tennis
- 3 the Sahara
- 4 the Amazon
- 5 Slovenia
- 6 cheetahs
- 7 the mobile phone

1 Everest is higher than Mont Blanc.



### 3 ★ ★ Comparing qualities

Use the chart to compare the two DVDs. Use the comparative form of the adjective given.

#### DVD Club

Key		Unlucky 13	Ghost City
*** = excellent	1	2003	2002
** = good	2	95 minutes	110 minutes
* = OK	3	***	**
!!! = very, very scary	4	£14	£16
!! = scary	5	!!!	!
! = quite scary			

- (old) Ghost City is older than Unlucky 13.  
(new) \_\_\_\_\_
- (short) \_\_\_\_\_  
(long) \_\_\_\_\_
- (good) \_\_\_\_\_
- (expensive) \_\_\_\_\_  
(cheap) \_\_\_\_\_
- (scary) \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 ★ ★ Then and now

Complete the sentences with the correct adjective in the comparative form.

busy, cheap, easy, formal, long, practical, young, colourful

I'm ninety years old now but when I was (1) younger, I wore very fashionable clothes. I wore (2) \_\_\_\_\_ clothes in those days. Now I prefer black and grey. Skirts were (3) \_\_\_\_\_ when I was a girl. You didn't see women's legs. Men wore (4) \_\_\_\_\_ clothes in those days. They didn't wear jeans to parties. Clothes cost a lot in those days. I think they are (5) \_\_\_\_\_ now. Clothes are also (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to wash now. You can just throw them in a washing machine. In general, clothes are (7) \_\_\_\_\_ today because nobody has time to wash clothes by hand. Women are (8) \_\_\_\_\_ today because they have jobs and families.

### 5 ★ ★ more and less

Use the cues to write pairs of comparisons with the same meaning. Use *less* in the second comparison. Give your opinion each time.

- surfing/skiing (dangerous)  
Skiing is more dangerous than surfing.  
Surfing is less dangerous than skiing.

- Tom Cruise/Russell Crowe (famous)

- love/money (important)

- Halle Berry/Cameron Diaz (attractive)

- homework/housework (boring)

- sweatshirts/jackets (comfortable)

- Madrid/London (sunny)

## Word Corner

Write the correct word in each gap.

casual, cheap, colourful, expensive, fashionable, formal, practical, comfortable

- You don't need to wear a tie. It isn't a \_\_\_\_\_ party. Wear \_\_\_\_\_ clothes.
- She always wears \_\_\_\_\_ clothes - red, blue, purple, green.
- I haven't got enough money for that \_\_\_\_\_ shirt. I can get a \_\_\_\_\_ one at the market for about £5.
- She never wears last year's jeans. She gets new ones every year. She's very \_\_\_\_\_.
- Long skirts aren't very \_\_\_\_\_. For example, it's difficult to walk fast when you're wearing a long skirt.
- When I get home from work, I take off my office clothes and put on something more \_\_\_\_\_.

## 32 COMMUNICATION

### 1 Describing people



The sentences below describe the two different people in the picture. Choose the correct sentences to describe each person.

What does Peter/Paul look like? Well, He's a short/tall man. He's got a long/round face with a big/small nose. He's got long/short, dark/blond hair. He's wearing a T-shirt, jeans and trainers/a polyester shirt, wide tie and leather trousers.

What does Peter look like?

What does Paul look like?

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

### 2 Describe these people.



Choose a set of adjectives to describe the people above.

casual, cheap, comfortable, conservative, dirty, expensive, fashionable, formal, smart, trendy, uncomfortable, unfashionable

One boy looks \_\_\_\_\_

The girl is \_\_\_\_\_

The other boy \_\_\_\_\_

## Skills Corner

### Listening – matching

(Recording SB page 83, Module 11, Warm-up, Exercise 3)

Listen to three people talking about their clothes and match them with the information below. Write numbers in the boxes: Speaker 1 (1), Speaker 2 (2), Speaker 3 (3).

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> likes sunglasses         | 4 <input type="checkbox"/> doesn't like dresses              |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> wears an earring         | 5 <input type="checkbox"/> doesn't think a lot about clothes |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> wears expensive trainers | 6 <input type="checkbox"/> likes bright colours              |

## 33 FOCUS ON WRITING

1 Look at the T-shirts and write the sizes and then the size abbreviation you find on the label.



1 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Spelling with 'ie' and 'ei'

Use 'ie' when it rhymes with 'be' but NOT after 'c'. But 'friend' and 'quiet' do not follow this rule! Use 'ei' when it does NOT rhyme with 'be' and after 'c'.

But 'science' does not follow this rule!

- |             |           |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1 bel__ve   | 6 __ght   |
| 2 th__r     | 7 rec__ve |
| 3 __ther    | 8 fr__nd  |
| 4 n__ce     | 9 h__ght  |
| 5 n__ghbour | 10 p__ce  |

### 3 Punctuation

Put the capital letters and punctuation in the passage.

in the famous book lord of the rings there is a horrible character called gollum who is very unattractive with an old thin body and big blue eyes he was a hobbit who murdered his friend déagal stole the one ring and went to live in the misty mountains after hundreds of years another hobbit bilbo baggins takes the ring from him and gives it to his nephew frodo later gollum meets frodo and pretends to be pleasant and helpful but he tries to get the ring again fortunately he isnt successful

### 4 Make sentences using *either ... or ...*.

- I left my watch \_\_\_\_\_  
(in the gym/changing room)
- I wear \_\_\_\_\_  
(black jeans/baggy trousers to the club)
- We go \_\_\_\_\_  
(camping/stay in a caravan park)
- I want to study \_\_\_\_\_  
(medicine/computer studies at university)
- Peter is very happy because \_\_\_\_\_  
(has a new girlfriend/found his favourite CD)

### 5 Match the adjectives with the illustration.

baggy, formal, glamorous, practical, wide, worn



# Review 11

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Write the adjectives in the comparative form.

Of course, good health is (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (important) than everything. I started doing regular exercise six months ago and I already feel a lot (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (healthy) and (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (strong). I am also (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (thin) now, which is great – 60 kilos instead of 65. Some types of exercise are (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (good) than others. I prefer swimming to running. You get (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (hot) running and running shoes are always (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (expensive) than a swimming costume. But it's (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (difficult) to find a place to swim than to find a place to run. Some people say that swimming in a pool is (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (boring) than running in a park. Perhaps that's true. But I think running is (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (bad) for your knees than swimming.

### 2 Write true sentences with a comparative adjective, using the cues.

1 videos/DVDs (new)

\_\_\_\_\_

2 Cairo/London (cold)

\_\_\_\_\_

3 Sweden/Australia (hot)

\_\_\_\_\_

4 ice hockey/football (popular)

\_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Fill the gaps with the correct adjective in the comparative form.

colourful, comfortable, expensive, fashionable, formal

- I haven't got much money. Let's go to a \_\_\_\_\_ shop than this one.
- She's very trendy. Her clothes are \_\_\_\_\_ than anyone else's in the class.
- Please wear something \_\_\_\_\_ to work tomorrow. You have to wear dark blue or black.
- I want to relax in the garden so I am going to put on some \_\_\_\_\_ clothes.
- Dave is \_\_\_\_\_ than Mike. Dave usually wears jeans and he never wears a tie.

## VOCABULARY

### 4 Describe what to wear in these situations.

- |                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1 at school       | 6 sunbathing     |
| 2 at a club       | 7 going to bed   |
| 3 backpacking     | 8 playing tennis |
| 4 doing housework | 9 on a motorbike |
| 5 at an interview | 10 in the rain   |

### 5 Write the comparatives.

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1 rich _____   | 6 lovely _____ |
| 2 hot _____    | 7 honest _____ |
| 3 funny _____  | 8 nice _____   |
| 4 casual _____ | 9 quiet _____  |
| 5 good _____   | 10 bad _____   |

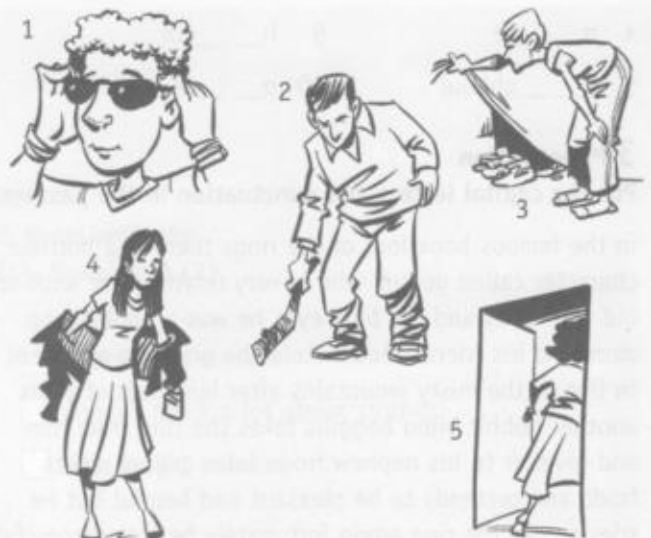
### 6 Here are some titles of magazine stories and articles. Match them with the correct magazine (a or b).

- Meet the stars
- Bright colours for the beach
- Madonna's new film
- Sweatshirts are 'in'
- This week in Hollywood
- What to wear this winter



### 7 Look at the pictures. What are they doing? Choose verbs from the box.

go out, look for, pick up, put on, take off





# Key Words List

## MODULE 11 IMAGE

### clothes and things to wear

boots, cap, coat, dress, earring, jacket, jeans, jumper, mini-skirt, necklace, shirt, shoes, shorts, skirt, sunglasses, sweatshirt, top, trainers, trousers, T-shirt; button, zip

### money

coin, credit card, handbag, note, wallet; cheap/expensive

### adjectives

*materials:* cotton, denim, leather, nylon, plastic, silk

*sizes:* extra small (XS), small (S), medium (M), large (L), extra large (XL)

*styles:* attractive, casual, colourful, comfortable/ uncomfortable, fashionable/unfashionable, formal/informal, glamorous, in/out, practical, smart, trendy; look good/horrible in

*shapes:* long, narrow, short, wide

*colours:* black, blue, brown, green, orange, red, yellow; bright (red), dark (green), light (blue)

### body shapes

medium height, plump, short, tall, thin

### hair

curly, straight, short, long, blond, black, brown, dark, fair, red

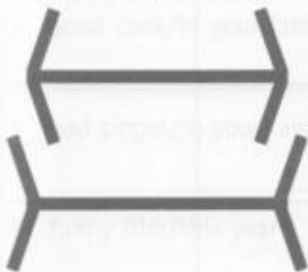
### face

long, round, square, thin; big/small (ears/eyes/nose/mouth)

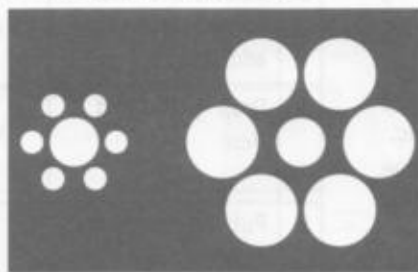
### linking

for example

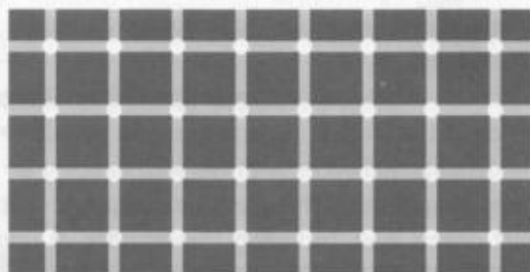
### 1 Look at these drawings and answer the questions.



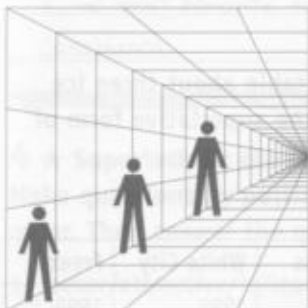
- 1 Is the bottom line longer than the top one?



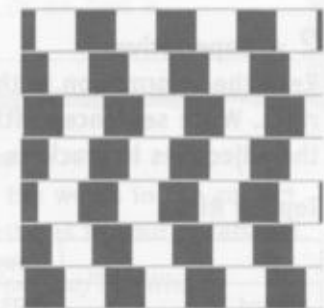
- 2 Look at the centre spots. Which one is the biggest?



- 3 Are there more black circles than white ones?



- 4 Which man is the tallest?



- 5 Are there more straight lines than curved ones?

## Module Diary

1 Look at the lessons from Module 11 in your coursebook. Tick the boxes that are true for you.

	easy	OK	difficult
31 Looking good			
32 Appearance			
33 Communication Workshop			

- 1 Which is your favourite lesson? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Do you still have difficulty with comparative adjectives? Y N
- 3 How often do you use the Mini-dictionary?  
Never Sometimes Often Very often



# 12 Celebrities

## Warm-up

### 1 Celebrity quiz

Can you guess who these famous people are?



- 1 He was born in 1853 in the Netherlands. In 1889 he painted *Sunflowers* a few months after he cut off his left ear. Did you know when he was younger, he was a teacher in England and later worked as a preacher to poor coalminers in Belgium?
- 2 This world-famous politician was born in 1918 and became the first black president of South Africa in 1994. He travels the world promoting world peace.
- 3 This Czech was born in 1956 and became an American citizen in 1981. She has won 20 Wimbledon titles including 9 women's singles championships.
- 4 This man is the lead singer of the *Rolling Stones* which is the longest playing group in popular music. He delights audiences with his wild dancing on stage.
- 5 Many people think this Austrian composer wrote the best operas ever, including *The Marriage of Figaro* and *The Magic Flute*.
- 6 This Brazilian is known as the greatest footballer of all time and scored 1,280 goals.

### 2 Complete the sentences with the prepositions.

about (2), at (2), in (2), on (2), to (2)

- 1 Are you really interested \_\_\_\_\_ boring celebrities?
- 2 I'm bad \_\_\_\_\_ spelling but not grammar.
- 3 I listen \_\_\_\_\_ rock music when I'm \_\_\_\_\_ a good mood.
- 4 There were interesting puzzles \_\_\_\_\_ page 81.
- 5 Where are you going \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend?
- 6 You can read \_\_\_\_\_ famous people \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet.
- 7 Turn right when you come \_\_\_\_\_ the end of the street.
- 8 The story's \_\_\_\_\_ a girl who lived a long time ago.

## 34 GRAMMAR

### 1 ★ Superlative adjectives – forms

Put each adjective with its superlative form in the correct part of the table:

boring, bad, sad, ~~young~~, easy, successful, lazy, good, talented, rich, happy, rude, smart, red, hot, large

		Adjective	Superlative
1	Add -est	young	the youngest
2	Add -st		
3	Double the final consonant and add -est		
4	Drop -y and add -iest		
5	Put the words <i>the most</i> in front		
6	Irregular superlatives		

### 2 ★ Superlatives

Read the information in the table about three ice rinks. Write sentences with the superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.

#### Top Ice Rinks

	Iceworks	White City	Freeze
Opened	2003	1998	1999
Price	£12.00	£10.50	£9.00
Near to the town centre	0.5 km	1.5 km	2.5 km
Number of skaters every day	300	150	350
Size of ice rink in square metres	250	200	180
Good music?	4/10	5/10	6/10
Good café?	***	*	**

- 1 (new) Iceworks is the newest
- 2 (old) White City
- 3 (cheap) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 (expensive) \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 (near) \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 (popular) \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 (big) \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 (bad) \_\_\_\_\_ has \_\_\_\_\_ music.
- 9 (good) \_\_\_\_\_ has \_\_\_\_\_ café.

### 3 ★ Questions with *which* and *who*

Write questions with *which* or *who* and a superlative adjective. In your notebook, answer the questions with your own ideas.

- 1 romantic film/of all time  
Which is the most romantic film of all time?
- 2 hot month/in your country  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 good cook/in your family  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 bad singer/in your family  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 funny film/this year  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 easy subject/in your school  
\_\_\_\_\_

1 The most romantic film of all time is  
Casablanca.

### 4 ★ Superlatives: *the least*

Make questions by putting the words in the correct order. Then answer the questions in your notebooks.

- 1 actor/attractive/is/least/on/the/TV?/Who  
Who is the least attractive actor on TV?
- 2 TV programme/last/least/popular/the/was/Which/year?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 all/least/film/is/of/the/time?/What/interesting  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 exciting/to/is/least/sport/the/watch?/What  
\_\_\_\_\_

- 5 all/is/least/of/singer/talented/the/time?/Who  
\_\_\_\_\_

- 6 café/expensive/in/least/the/town?/What's/your  
\_\_\_\_\_

1 The least attractive actor on TV is ....

### 5 ★ ★ *one of the (most)*

Use the cues to write sentences with *one of the* and a superlative.

- 1 Madonna (famous) pop star/in the world  
Madonna is one of the most famous pop stars in the world.
- 2 Cameron Diaz (high) earner/in Hollywood  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 *Titanic* (popular) film/of all time  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 J.K. Rowling (successful) writer/of all time  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 London (expensive) city/in the world  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Word Corner

Write the correct word in each gap.

all right, boring, exciting, funny, good-looking, overrated, talented

- 1 Everyone in the cinema was asleep! It was a very \_\_\_\_\_ film.
- 2 We laughed all the time. It was a really \_\_\_\_\_ show.
- 3 She is \_\_\_\_\_ at lots of things. She paints, plays the guitar and speaks three languages.
- 4 I don't know about his personality but look at this photo. He is very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 I don't think he's a very good actor. I know he's famous but I think he is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 It's one of the most \_\_\_\_\_ books of the year. You can't stop reading it.
- 7 The concert was \_\_\_\_\_ but it wasn't brilliant.

## 35 COMMUNICATION

### 1 Making suggestions

Complete the dialogue with words and phrases from the box.

Let's (x2), I like, good idea, I don't like, I'd like, what about, on

David's family are talking about what to do this evening ...

**Dad:** (1) Let's go and see a film this evening.

**Mum:** What's (2) \_\_\_\_\_?

**Dad:** Well, *Sleepless in Seattle* is on again at the Odeon for one night.

**David:** Oh no! (3) \_\_\_\_\_ romantic films.

**Mum:** Well, (4) \_\_\_\_\_ TV?

**Sophie:** There's *Friends* at nine o'clock. (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to watch that.

**David:** That's a (6) \_\_\_\_\_. *Friends* is funny and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ Jennifer Aniston. She's very talented.

**Dad:** OK. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ do that.

### 2 Choose the correct word.

'This evening is an exciting night (1) *at/for* British film. So many famous actors are arriving in front of the building (2) *at/in* the moment. I can see the glamorous star (3) *to/of* the film (4) *with/for* her new boyfriend who is walking (5) *ahead off/to* her. She's wearing a stunning dress (6) *on/in* pale yellow. And now a long car stops and cameras are flashing everywhere (7) *for/as* Prince Charles gets out (8) *in/of* the back and waves (9) *by/to* the crowds. Someone is trying to speak to him but he walks past and quickly makes his way (10) *in/into* the cinema.'



### 3 Join words from each column to make new words.

1 some	mail
2 fan	star
3 how	be
4 song	rated
5 film	hero
6 good	thing
7 over	ever
8 super	looking
9 girl	writer
10 may	friend

### 4 Complete the table.

noun	adjective
beauty	
	colourful
excitement	
expense	
	famous
fashion	
	happy
possibility	
romance	
	successful

## Skills Corner

### Reading - matching

Read the summaries of four films. Match the statements below (1-8) with the correct film (A, B, C or D).

- ☐ is good for someone interested in history
- ☐ is about falling in love
- ☐ shows the life of poor people
- ☐ is full of action
- ☐ is about real historical people and events
- ☐ tells us something about life in South America
- ☐ is happening in the world of modern politics
- ☐ is about someone who helps people to find a girlfriend or boyfriend

#### A THE INTERPRETER

An FBI agent has to protect a United Nations interpreter (Nicole Kidman) who learns about a plot to kill someone important.

#### B MARIA FULL OF GRACE

An innocent-looking 17-year-old girl tries to free her Columbian family from poverty by smuggling drugs.

#### C HITCH

Professional matchmaker Alex 'Hitch' Hitchens (Will Smith) finds that he needs some of his own advice to get journalist Sara (Eva Mendes) interested in him.

#### D DOWNFALL

The last days of Adolph Hitler seen through the eyes of his personal secretary.



## 36 FOCUS ON WRITING

## 1 Punctuation

Suggestions have a question mark (?) when they start with a question word or have a question word order.

Examples: *What do you want?*

*Do you want an apple?*

Suggestions have a full stop (.) when they don't start with a question word and have a statement word order:

Example: *Let's go out.*

Add a question mark or a full stop to these suggestions.

- Let's go to a football match this evening
- Can we go to the Odeon in the holidays
- What about the opera
- I'd like to go this week
- There's a funny film on this evening. What do you think
- OK. Let's do that

## 2 Linking: review

Circle the correct link word.

- However/During the 1990s, The Spice Girls was one of the most successful groups in the world.
- Luciano Pavarotti is an opera singer. José Carreras is too/also a famous opera singer.
- We watched the film on TV and then/now we went to bed.
- Paul McCartney is from Liverpool. The other Beatles came from Liverpool, however/too.
- The life of a celebrity is difficult for example,/ because they never have a private life.
- Steven Spielberg is successful however/because he makes a lot of good films.
- I laughed a lot during/when I watched the video.
- Charlie Chaplin was popular also/because he was very funny.

## 3 Describe what these people's jobs are.

- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1 architect    | 7 composer    |
| 2 artist       | 8 guide       |
| 3 doctor       | 9 butcher     |
| 4 TV presenter | 10 pilot      |
| 5 childminder  | 11 waitress   |
| 6 model        | 12 journalist |

## 4 Write what career you want to have and say why.

## Language Problem Solving 3

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

## 1 Complete each sentence with an indefinite pronoun.

- Are you going anywhere exciting this weekend?
- I want to buy something nice for Eva's birthday.
- They are great friends. They go together.
- 'Where are you going?' 'Nowhere! I'm staying right here.'
- There's something good on TV tonight. Let's get a video from the video shop.
- She came back with about twenty presents. There were presents for everyone in the family.
- There isn't anything to drink in the fridge.
- Emily and I don't have any secrets. I tell her nothing.
- Did you see someone take the money from the box?
- It was a terrible film. Nobody enjoyed it.

## IT/THERE

2 Complete the sentences with *it* or *there*.

- Let's stay at home. There is nothing good at the cinema.
- It is a horrible day today.  
There isn't any sun.
- There isn't a café at the beach.  
It is best to take food with you.
- Listen. That is the best song on the CD.
- There was a good programme on TV last night. It was about life in Hollywood.
- 'Is there a telephone in your room?' 'Yes, there is. It is next to the bed.'
- It is very dark in here because there isn't a light.
- There was a fire in the room but it was very cold.
- 'Was it easy to get back?' 'Yes, there was a bus from the centre.'
- It wasn't a good party. There wasn't anything to eat and I was really hungry.

# Review 12

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Put the adjectives in the comparative or superlative form.

- Your parents are \_\_\_\_\_ (funny) than mine. They really make me laugh.
- Wear your \_\_\_\_\_ (comfortable) clothes for the long train trip.
- She bought \_\_\_\_\_ (expensive) CD player in the shop because she didn't have much money.
- My brother is \_\_\_\_\_ (fit) than me but my father is \_\_\_\_\_ (fit) in the family.
- Skiing is dangerous but it's \_\_\_\_\_ (dangerous) than horse riding. I think horse riding is \_\_\_\_\_ (dangerous) sport in the world.
- I can't read Tim's letter. His writing is \_\_\_\_\_ (bad) than Joe's.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ (good) nightclub in Richmond is called *White Light*.
- I'm wearing my \_\_\_\_\_ (warm) clothes because it's much \_\_\_\_\_ (cold) today than yesterday.
- He's quite a good singer but he's \_\_\_\_\_ (talented) than his brother. His brother is really amazing.

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct words.

- Who's the \_\_\_\_\_ pop singer in your country?  
a less famous    b famous    c most famous
- \_\_\_\_\_ was very windy yesterday.  
a There    b They    c It
- \_\_\_\_\_ are excellent photos. What camera did you use?  
a There    b It    c They
- We all wore our \_\_\_\_\_ clothes last Sunday.  
a smarter    b smartest    c less smart
- \_\_\_\_\_ was a scary story in the newspaper yesterday.  
a There    b It    c This
- My shoes are \_\_\_\_\_ than yours.  
a less expensive    b not expensive    c expensive

- There's a very \_\_\_\_\_ boy in our class called Pete.  
a cool    b cooler    c coolest
- Chris is \_\_\_\_\_ than his brother.  
a the better-looking    b better-looking  
c the best-looking
- This story is the \_\_\_\_\_ in the book.  
a most bad    b worse    c worst
- She's one of \_\_\_\_\_ people in our school.  
a funnier    b most funny    c the funniest

## VOCABULARY

### 3 Underline the word that does not rhyme.

- |           |       |        |
|-----------|-------|--------|
| 1 does    | goes  | rose   |
| 2 were    | their | square |
| 3 glove   | love  | drove  |
| 4 bone    | one   | phone  |
| 5 take    | steak | speak  |
| 6 over    | lover | cover  |
| 7 meat    | sweat | feet   |
| 8 hate    | ate   | pet    |
| 9 froze   | close | lose   |
| 10 cheese | peace | place  |

### 4 Choose a word to fill the gaps.



say, meaning, example, part, check

- I can use the Mini-dictionary to \_\_\_\_\_ a spelling.
- I can learn the \_\_\_\_\_ of the word.
- The dictionary tells me its \_\_\_\_\_ of speech, too.
- There is often an \_\_\_\_\_ sentence to show me how to use the word.
- Also, I can learn how to \_\_\_\_\_ the word using the phonetics.

## Use of English

## 1 Sentence transformation

Using the words in brackets, write each sentence again so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- I really enjoyed my holiday in Turkey last summer. (good time)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- There was no air-conditioning in my room and that's why I complained to the hotel manager. (because)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- I think it's a shame that so few people are interested in modern art. (wish)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- A university degree is not as important as years of experience. (more important)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- These two backpacks look identical. (the same)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Nobody in class reads faster than Tania. (fastest)  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Cloze

Read the text below and fill in the blanks with an appropriate word. Use one word for each blank.

**A celebrity dress for £140,000**

Can you remember (1) \_\_\_\_\_ story, *The Wizard of Oz*? It is a tale of (2) \_\_\_\_\_ young girl, Dorothy, and her dog, Toto, who leave their home in Kansas and go (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the magical world of Oz. In 1939, a film was made based (4) \_\_\_\_\_ this story. It was one of the first full colour films (5) \_\_\_\_\_ history. The actress who played Dorothy, Judy Garland, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ a blue and white dress. This dress is now one of the (7) \_\_\_\_\_ famous (and most expensive) costumes in history.

Sixteen years ago, a British collector (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the dress for £10,500 at an auction in New York. Does this seem like a lot (9) \_\_\_\_\_ money? Well, yesterday the dress went up for sale at auction again and the expected price (10) \_\_\_\_\_ £35,000. (11) \_\_\_\_\_, there were two buyers who (12) \_\_\_\_\_ bidding for it against each other. (13) \_\_\_\_\_ the end, the dress went for four times the expected price! The buyer said he bought it

(14) \_\_\_\_\_ his wife who is a great fan of *The Wizard of Oz*. (15) \_\_\_\_\_ he got home and asked his wife to open the present, there was another surprise. It turned out that his wife was the other bidder who tried so desperately to get the dress (16) \_\_\_\_\_ the auction! So dreams do come true but do they have to cost so much?

## 3 Verb transformation

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- Tim \_\_\_\_\_ (lock) the front door and now he can't find his key.
- In my country, a black cat \_\_\_\_\_ (bring) good luck.
- That's a lovely jumper you \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) today.
- \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (have) any idea where Rob is? I \_\_\_\_\_ (not find) him anywhere.
- Before you leave, \_\_\_\_\_ (turn off) the lights; we \_\_\_\_\_ (try) to save energy.
- I normally \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) two apples a day.

## 4 Word formation

Complete the text. Use the words in CAPITALS to form a verb, noun, adjective or adverb that fits the gap.

**Images of New Mexico**

The Galisteo Inn in New Mexico is an (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (AMAZE) place to visit and to stay. The (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (BUILD), which is an old Spanish hacienda, is three hundred years old. It has been (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (CARE) restored by local architects, who took their (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (INSPIRE) from local history and tradition. Outside, the walls are a warm brown. Inside, the walls are (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (COLOUR): orange, blue and yellow.

The surrounding landscape is very (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (BEAUTY): dry desert and wonderful big blue skies. One of the main (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (ATTRACT) is horse riding through the desert. Beginners and more experienced riders are both welcome.

New Mexico is (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (QUICK) becoming one of the most popular tourist destinations in the USA. Many celebrities have their homes in New Mexico. Go and visit the Galisteo Inn before its (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (POPULAR) rises even more and it becomes too (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (CROWD) to enjoy.

## Speaking

### Photo description

Describe the picture. Answer the following questions:

- Are these people having a good time? Why do you think so?
- What is your favourite way of spending your holidays?

#### TIP

- Think about each question carefully. What is the aim of each question?
- Give your opinion about what is happening in the picture.
- Relate the picture to your own life.

#### USEFUL PHRASES

- In the picture ...; there is/are ...; in the middle of the picture ...; in the background/foreground ...; on the left/on the right ...
- Yes, I think they are because ... (the weather is fine); No, I don't think so ...; It is too crowded ... They are/look ...
- I love/like going to .../swimming/doing nothing ...; I don't like ...; I prefer ... because ...;



## Reading

1 Read the text below. Choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

### *Survival holidays in Alaska – a personal story*

On May 6 I set up a base camp on the ice cap and waited for the plane to bring food. For the next four days it snowed and the plane didn't come. Sometimes I went out for a short ski, but most of the time I lay silently in my tent, alone with my thoughts.

As the days passed, I grew very anxious. I had no radio and no other means of communication. I was almost out of stove fuel, so I couldn't cook anything. I had some cheese and three packets of crisps. This, I hoped, would be enough for three or four more days. But what next?

When I woke up on May 10 it was still snowing and it was very windy. I didn't know what to do: start walking to the coast in the morning or stay here, on the ice cap. Suddenly I heard something. I couldn't believe my luck: it was a plane! I ran out of the tent. I waved my arms and shouted, and then I took my sleeping bag and waved it in the air. When the plane began to fly in my direction, I felt tears of joy in my eyes. The pilot came and went three times and he dropped two boxes of food every time. Then the plane disappeared and there was silence all around me again. I felt sad, depressed, lost.

On May 11 the weather was good and I knew it was time for me to do something. I packed up my rucksack and began skiing. After two days that also involved walking through deep snow and climbing high rocks, I came to the coast. My adventure was over.

- On May 9  
A the plane came with food.  
B the weather wasn't good.  
C he finally left his tent.  
D he didn't eat anything.
- The author was worried because  
A he couldn't contact anybody.  
B he didn't know how to cook.  
C he had enough food for one day.  
D he couldn't sleep at all.
- When the author heard the plane  
A he was on his way to the coast.  
B he was shocked.  
C he tried to show where he was.  
D he started packing.
- The author got ... boxes of food.  
A two  
B three  
C four  
D six
- All in all, the author's adventure  
A made him very ill.  
B lasted seven days.  
C finished on May 13.  
D was rather relaxing.



**2** Read the text below. Match each paragraph (1-4) with a title (A-F). There are two extra titles.

- A ☐ Switch them on or switch them off
- B ☐ Be an artist and create clothes for others
- C ☐ Do as the Romans did ... but with a difference
- D ☐ Buy clothes and save on perfume
- E ☐ Buy them, wash them ... and they still look nice
- F ☐ Be an artist and protect our planet

## Fashion for the future

In four different laboratories across Great Britain, scientists are already working on fashion for the future. Today we visit them and talk about their ideas.

**1**

First we go to a small university building on the outskirts of Liverpool. Jocelyn Brown, the head of the department, informs us about their project: clothes which smell. As Brown explains, people can save on anti-perspirants and perfume because the clothes produce a nice, fresh aroma.

**2**

The next place to visit is a charming village on the coast of Scotland. Our host here is Mandy Wilson who manages the project for the University of Glasgow. Their idea is clothes with a tiny electrical heating system to keep the wearer warm. When it is hot, you can switch the system off and clothes are cool again!

**3**

In Wales, scientists are busy with large sheets of paper-like material. They are producing clothes which the user can paint and decorate any way they like. What's more, it is possible to wash the clothes and paint them once again. Mary Smith, the director of the project, also stresses the fact that these clothes are environment-friendly.

**4**

But a truly modern idea of clothing is waiting for us in the capital of England, London. Nick Heldon of Fashion Co. presents us with something which looks like a Roman toga, a set of different belts, and a pair of scissors. We put the toga on and can do whatever we like with it: for example, cut it very short, or put a belt on.

So the fashion industry is getting ready to face the future. In the meantime, we should try and earn more because it seems that all the ideas are rather expensive.

**3** Read the text below. Decide if sentences 1-4 are true or false. For questions 5 and 6, choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

## Andy and Larry Wachowski the unusual creators of *Matrix*

The brilliant duo, Andy and Larry Wachowski, have got a Polish name but in fact they are American. They were born in 1965 (Larry) and 1967 (Andy) and lived in the Polish district in Chicago. Their father was a businessman and their mother was a nurse. Both parents loved watching films and spent a fortune on tickets to drive-in cinemas. Their sons followed their example. In the early 1990s, they gave up university and started writing film scripts. Nobody wanted to buy them, so the brothers also had to work as carpenters.

The Wachowski brothers did not find it very easy to start their film career. At first, they only worked on other people's film scripts. In the mid-1990s the famous producer, Dino De Laurentiis, agreed to pay for their first film, *Bound*. In fact, the brothers tried to sell the idea of *Matrix* to him too, but he did not like it. He thought that only a small group of computer fans would like a film like that.

When *Bound* appeared, the brothers moved to Los Angeles, California, where they still live in their small houses on the beach. The huge success of *Matrix* (1999) and *Matrix Reloaded* (2003) did not change their lifestyles at all. They live quiet, personal lives far away from the noise and glitter of Hollywood. What's more, the brothers still wear casual clothes, most often Chicago Bulls jerseys and caps. When a Hollywood agent gave them a lot of money to buy good clothes, they spent it all on T-shirts and baseball caps.

- 1 ☐ Andy and Larry are the sons of two people who loved film.
- 2 ☐ In the early 1990s, Andy and Larry earned their first money in the film industry.
- 3 ☐ Dino De Laurentiis didn't believe in the success of *Matrix*.
- 4 ☐ Andy and Larry bought houses on the beach after the success of *Matrix*.
- 5 What is the topic of the last paragraph?  
A the reasons for the success of *Matrix*  
B Andy and Larry's favourite clothes  
C the Wachowskis' unchanging lifestyle  
D the busy life of Hollywood agents
- 6 Where can you find a text like this?  
A in a historical novel  
B in a popular newspaper  
C in a scientific journal  
D in a fantasy story

## Listening

(Recording SB page 69, Module 9, Warm-up, Exercise 2)

Listen to four people talking about different ways of spending free time. Match the items (A-E) to each person (1-4). There is one extra item. Write your answers in the table. You will hear the recording twice.

Which text mentions:

- A a view from the window?
- B a modern library?
- C a sporting activity?
- D a historical building?
- E a famous person?

1	2	3	4

### TIP

The following are useful tips when doing matching listening exercises.

- Before you listen, read the instructions carefully and make sure you know what you are being asked to do. For example, in this matching exercise, there are four people and five items. One of the items is extra and is not an answer.
- Read the list of items before you listen. When you listen for the first time, you will hear more information than you need to answer the questions. Try to concentrate on the sentence that contains the information you need. Write your answers.
- When you listen for the second time, check your answers. If you don't know the answer, guess. Don't leave any of the questions unanswered.

## Writing

### 1 Short text

You are on a holiday which is a disaster. Write a postcard to your English friend.

- Write where you are and how long you are going to stay there.
- Express your dissatisfaction with the bad weather.
- Describe what is wrong in the way your stay is organised.
- Express your hope that your friend is having a better holiday.

### TIP

- A postcard is a very short text.
- The style of the postcard depends on who you are writing to. In this case, it is your friend so the language can be informal.
- You can find an example of a holiday postcard and some useful phrases on page 74 of the Students' Book.

### USEFUL PHRASES

- Hi; I'm at/on/in ...; I have to stay here for ...
- The weather is awful! It is (raining/snowing/windy/cloudy) ...
- What's even worse, the stay is very (boring/badly organised) ...
- Are your holidays any better?; I hope your holidays are ...; you're more lucky ...

### 2 Long text

You have just read an article about the Wachowski brothers who created the film called *Matrix* (see page 89). Write a letter to the newspaper to ask for more information about them.

- Start your letter in an appropriate way and explain why you are writing.
- Give your opinion about the film.
- Ask some questions to find out more about the brothers and the film.
- Finish the letter in an appropriate way.

### TIP

- A letter to a newspaper is a formal piece of writing.
- Use appropriate formal phrases to start and finish your letter.
- Write in full sentences.
- Remember to use no more than 120-150 words.

### USEFUL PHRASES

- Dear Sir or Madam/Dear Editor; I am writing to ask a few questions about ...; I would like to ask a few questions about ...; I would like to know more about ...
- In my opinion *Matrix* is ...
- First, I would like to know what/why/when/where ...; Second, I wonder if it is true that ...; Third, could you tell me if ...
- Thank you very much for your help; Yours faithfully

# Key Words List

## MODULE 12 CELEBRITIES

### celebrity

champion, hero, hot property, megastar, superhero, star; fanmail, number one hit

### adjectives

beautiful/ugly, boring/interesting, brilliant, cool, creepy, early/late, easy/difficult, exciting/unexciting, experienced, famous/unknown, funny, good-looking, important/unimportant, overrated, popular/unpopular, possible/impossible, romantic/unromantic, talented, world-famous

### referring to people/things/places

anyone, anything, anywhere; everyone, everything, everywhere; no one, nothing, nowhere; someone, something, somewhere

### applying for a job

curriculum vitae: achievements, address, date of birth, education, experience, interests, nationality, sex; interview

### fixed phrases

the best ever, a big break, in the end, piece of information, one thing is, a long time ago, of all time, do something in a big way

### making suggestions

Let's ... What about ... ? I know/I've an idea, why don't we/you ... ?

**1** Look at the 20 drawings for one minute. Now close your book and write down the things you can remember.



**2** Use *any, anyone, anything, everyone, everything, no one, someone, something, etc.*

'Has (1) \_\_\_\_\_ seen my dictionary? I thought I left it (2) \_\_\_\_\_ in this room but maybe (3) \_\_\_\_\_ used it and took it away. I've looked for it (4) \_\_\_\_\_ but I can't find it. Do you know (5) \_\_\_\_\_ about where it is? I asked my family but (6) \_\_\_\_\_ knows where it is.'

## Module Diary

**1** Look at the lessons from Module 12 in your coursebook. Tick the boxes that are true for you.

	easy	OK	difficult
34 Hollywood greets			
35 Star watching			
36 Communication Workshop			

- Which is your favourite lesson? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you still have difficulty with superlative adjectives? Y N
- How often do you use the Mini-dictionary?  
Never Sometimes Often Very often



# 13 Volunteers

## Warm-up

### 1 Choose the correct form of a verb to fill the gaps.

do, give, go on, raise, take part in, work

- We \_\_\_\_\_ the charity walk for Children in Need yesterday.
- What can you \_\_\_\_\_ to help?
- Can you \_\_\_\_\_ a small amount of your time to help us?
- I \_\_\_\_\_ on a helpline for children with serious problems.
- They hope to \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money for the charity.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ voluntary work every Tuesday.

### 2 Decide the best way to help in these situations.



- Members of the retirement home are bored on Sunday afternoons.
- The housing estate has no place for teenagers to go.
- The refugees arrived with nothing.
- The young boy can't talk to his family about his problems.
- Children in this African country have no qualified English teachers.
- There is no transport to take food to the homeless.
- The park needs many more trees and plants.
- There is no one to work in the charity shop.

### 3 Choose your favourite way to volunteer from Exercise 2 and explain your choice.

## 37 GRAMMAR

### 1 ★ *be going to*: affirmative

Complete the email with *going to* and a verb from the list.

be, buy, drive, fly, need, spend, stay, travel, teach, work

Hi Rosie,

You asked me about my plans for this summer. Well, I want to spend the summer in the States. But I haven't got any money. So first (1) I'm going to work in my uncle's shop. Then, when I've got enough money, (2) I \_\_\_\_\_ my plane ticket. (3) I \_\_\_\_\_ to New York, I think. I've got some friends there and (4) I \_\_\_\_\_ with them for a week or two. Then (5) I \_\_\_\_\_ around the country by bus. (6) I \_\_\_\_\_ some time in California with Melissa. She's got a car and (7) we \_\_\_\_\_ down the coast to Mexico. She says (8) she \_\_\_\_\_ me to surf! (9) It \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of fun but (10) I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money. So I have to start my job in Uncle Martin's shop very soon!

### 2 ★ *be going to*: affirmative and negative

Use the cues to write pairs of sentences with *going to*.

- I (not study) medicine/languages  
I'm not going to study medicine. I'm going to study languages.
- They (not see) a film/play  
\_\_\_\_\_
- She (not help) in a hospital/in a school.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- We (not see) Eva/Ana  
\_\_\_\_\_
- He (not work) with refugees/homeless children  
\_\_\_\_\_



### 3 ★ Questions and answers with *be going to*

Use the cues to write questions and answers with *be going to*.

- 1 Q: What/you do in the summer holidays?  
A: learn to sail  
Q: What are you going to do in the summer holidays?  
A: I'm going to learn to sail.
- 2 Q: Who/Pete teach in Africa?  
A: primary school children  
Q: \_\_\_\_\_  
A: \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Q: When/you make Amy's birthday cake?  
A: this afternoon  
Q: \_\_\_\_\_  
A: \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Q: How many people/she invite to her party?  
A: the whole class  
Q: \_\_\_\_\_  
A: \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Q: What/we buy her for her birthday?  
A: a CD  
Q: \_\_\_\_\_  
A: \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 ★ ★ Questions and answers with *be going to*

Use the cues to write questions and answers with *be going to*.

- 1 Q: it/rain?  
A: Yes. I/take my umbrella with me  
Q: Is it going to rain?  
A: Yes. I'm going to take my umbrella with me.
- 2 Q: you/buy the new Britney CD?  
A: No. And I/not listen to it!  
Q: \_\_\_\_\_  
A: \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Q: Liza/work in India?  
A: No. She/study photography in New York.  
Q: \_\_\_\_\_  
A: \_\_\_\_\_

- 4 Q: Why/they/close the club in Newbridge Road?  
A: Because they/open one in Raymond Avenue  
Q: \_\_\_\_\_  
A: \_\_\_\_\_

### 5 ★ ★ *be going to*: (all forms)

Complete the dialogue with *be going to* and the verbs.

- Sue: What (1) \_\_\_\_\_ are you going to do \_\_\_\_\_ (you/do) when you leave school?  
Tom: I (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (take) a year off and travel. Then I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (come back) here and go to university. What about you?  
Sue: I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in Spain for a year. I (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (get) a job there and learn perfect Spanish.  
Tom: (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (you/try) for a place at university?  
Sue: Yes. I want to study languages. What about you?  
Tom: I'm not sure. But I (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (not/study) languages because I'm no good at them. I (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (not/decide) until I get my exam results.

## Word Corner

Read the volunteers' words and answer the questions.

- Alina: A lot of them had AIDS. I made their beds and brought them food and water. I want to be a doctor one day.
- Max: Some of them live in boxes on the streets.
- Luke: We planted strawberries and beans.
- Josie: They find the dogs on the streets. My job was to give them food and water every day. I want to be a vet one day.

- 1 Who worked with animals? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Who planted crops? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Who helped in a hospital? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Who worked with homeless children? \_\_\_\_\_

## 38 COMMUNICATION

### 1 Speaking on the phone

Tick (✓) the correct answer (a, b or c).

- You want to speak to your friend Marcin. His brother answers the phone. What do you say to him?
  - I want to speak to my friend, Marcin.
  - Please tell Marcin I want him.
  - Could I speak to Marcin, please?
- You are Marcin's brother. He is not at home. What do you say?
  - Marcin's out, I'm afraid. Can I take a message?
  - No, he isn't here.
  - I'm his brother. Phone him later.
- You call Marcin when he's out. What does his brother say?
  - Have you got a phone number? I'll tell Marcin you called.
  - Marcin is not here.
  - I'm afraid Marcin is not there. Goodbye.
- The person phoning gives you a message for your brother. What do you say?
  - I don't like your message.
  - I'll pass on the message.
  - This telephone does not take messages.
- You can't understand the name of the person phoning. Do you say:
  - Who are you?
  - Do you have a surname?
  - Sorry, can you spell your name, please?

**2** The sentences from this phone conversation are mixed up. Put them in the correct order and write the dialogue in your notebook. Use the picture cues to start with.



**Andy**

Hitchcock's *Psycho*. Do you want to go?

Fine. I'll see you there.

There's a great film on at the Classic tonight.

Seven-thirty.

The Ritzy's got a new film called *Coming Home*. Do you know anything about it?

**Sue**

Let's meet at the cinema then. Is that OK?

Yes, it's about two brothers in Australia. People say it's very good.

When does it start?

Not really, I don't like horror films. What's the film at the Ritzy?

What is it?

**3** Write five sentences in your notebook about you and your friends or family. Use phrases from the table. You can add your own ideas, too.

This summer, Next year, I'd like to I'm going to ... is going to help	raise money for learn about work in	disabled people. medical research. a holiday home for children. the environment. first aid. a hospital. young children. a charity.
---	---	---

## Skills Corner

### Writing – a notice

Write a notice inviting people to a school picnic. The aim of the picnic is to collect money for new sports equipment for the school. Include this information:

- the aim of the picnic,
- when and where it is going to happen,
- the main attractions (stands? auctions? fun activities? music? bonfire?),
- food and drinks, with prices.

## 39 FOCUS ON WRITING

## 1 Punctuation

Write the dialogue again with the correct punctuation.

Peter from London is phoning his friend, Anna, in Prague ...



hello this is anna  
staneck

1 Hello? This is Anna Staneck.

peter its great to  
hear from you im  
fine how are you

3



thats great when are  
you going to visit us  
here in prague

5



hi anna this is  
peter from london  
how are you

2



were all fine its sonias  
first day back at university so  
shes not here but she sends her  
best wishes

4



well, im phoning about that  
how about next month i can take  
two weeks holiday in november

6

## 2 Spelling

Complete the words with the correct spelling. Say them in the sentence, and then circle the stressed syllable in each one, like the example.

- 1 This education college has morning, afternoon and evening classes.
- 2 My brother's a doctor and he's going to work as a voluntor in Kenya.
- 3 There's a good progrommo about protecting the environment on TV.
- 4 Not all humuluss people are rufugues.
- 5 Would you like to sponsor me in a swimming muruthun?
- 6 He took three months off unuvursutu to do some voluntury work.
- 7 I'm doing courses in ungunurung and cumputur science.

3 Linking with *to* or *for*Write *to* before verbs and *for* before (adjective +) nouns.

- 1 We need fifty volunteers to help us.
- 2 We are raising money for cancer research.
- 3 There are guide dogs for blind people.
- 4 Blind people have guide dogs to help them.
- 5 All this money is to protect animals.
- 6 The money is for the protection of animals.

## 4 You have a gap year before you go to university.

Write about voluntary work you want to do. Use *going to*.

# Review 13

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- clean/going/help/I'm/park./the/to/up  
\_\_\_\_\_
- are/go/going/on/our/sponsored/to/walk?/we/When  
\_\_\_\_\_
- apple/aren't/going/here./plant/the/They/to/trees  
\_\_\_\_\_
- are/do/going/leave/school?/to/What/when/you/you  
\_\_\_\_\_
- charity./collect/Dave/favourite/for/going/his/is/ money/to  
\_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Correct the mistake in each of these *be going to* sentences.

- Where do they going to build the hospital?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- What you are going to do in the summer holidays?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- My sister is going to working for a charity.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- I'm going clean up the rubbish in our river.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- These people isn't going to help us raise money.  
\_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Complete the sentences with (not) *be going to* and a verb from the list.

collect, get up, watch, wear, work

- I \_\_\_\_\_ those shoes again. They're really uncomfortable.
- Maria \_\_\_\_\_ money for African orphans.
- They \_\_\_\_\_ in the garden. It's raining hard.
- Dave \_\_\_\_\_ really early tomorrow because he wants to go for a run before work.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ a documentary about big cats. Do you want to join us?

## VOCABULARY

### 4 Choose a word to fill the gap.

We can use words to make adjectives weaker or stronger:

a bit/a little → quite → really → very  
→ extremely/terribly

a little, extremely, quite, really, very

- The children didn't eat for three days and were \_\_\_\_\_ hungry.
- She's not seriously ill but I'm \_\_\_\_\_ worried about her.
- I'm \_\_\_\_\_ sorry that you didn't get my phone message.
- The test was \_\_\_\_\_ difficult but I answered all the questions.
- The weather was \_\_\_\_\_ wet. However, we went for a walk.

### 5 Match each adjective with its correct meaning.

- |              |                             |
|--------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 disabled   | a without any money         |
| 2 blind      | b not well                  |
| 3 poor       | c without anywhere to live  |
| 4 starving   | d very afraid               |
| 5 lonely     | e not able to walk          |
| 6 sick       | f without any food          |
| 7 homeless   | g without anyone to talk to |
| 8 frightened | h not able to see           |





# Key Words List

## MODULE 13 VOLUNTEERS

### activities

do voluntary work (visit old people, clean up parks); give money/time/food/clothes to charities; go on a sponsored walk; help at an event/in a hospital; plant trees, raise/collect money; teach abroad, work on a helpline, work in a charity shop/refugee camp/with homeless people

### causes

animals, the environment, equipment (hospital/school), orphans, blind/disabled/elderly/homeless/lonely/old/poor/sick/starving people, refugees, medical research, poorer countries

### making adjectives weaker or stronger

a bit/a little, quite, really, very, extremely/terribly

### multi-part verbs

be out, clean something up, go on a sponsored walk, look for someone/something, pass on a message, put something on, take (time) off

### time

for + a period of time, next/this + a particular day/week/year/season

### verb tenses

future with *going to*

**1** Write the letters in the correct order to make 15 words from Module 13. Then find them in the word search.

lamina   tharicy   baddisle   ledlery   veten  
fodo   emossleh   ellnoy  
dol   orop   feergue   cisk  
doorspens   granvist   leventour

s	v	o	l	u	n	t	e	e	r
p	h	y	o	x	i	r	s	c	e
o	o	a	n	i	m	a	l	h	f
n	m	o	e	v	e	n	t	a	u
s	e	f	l	w	o	p	e	r	g
o	l	d	y	f	o	o	d	i	e
r	e	s	i	c	k	o	z	t	e
e	s	e	l	d	e	r	l	y	u
d	s	t	a	r	v	i	n	g	q
c	h	d	i	s	a	b	l	e	d

**2** Correct all the mistakes.

Every day, anyone on the world, many children is becoming refuges. They have homes but thier life are in danger. Maybe this is because there is none food or because in war. There families may have diffrent religion or ideas that other don't like. They travel a long way and can't take nothing with them. These children is hungry but frightened. A lucky ones manage get to a camp wear they can felt safe and go in school.

## Module Diary

**1** Look at the lessons from Module 13 in your coursebook. Tick the boxes that are true for you.

	easy	OK	difficult
37 Voluntary work			
38 Raising money			
39 Communication Workshop			

- Which is your favourite lesson? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you still have difficulty with *be going to*?  
Y N
- How often do you use the Mini-dictionary?  
Never Sometimes Often Very often

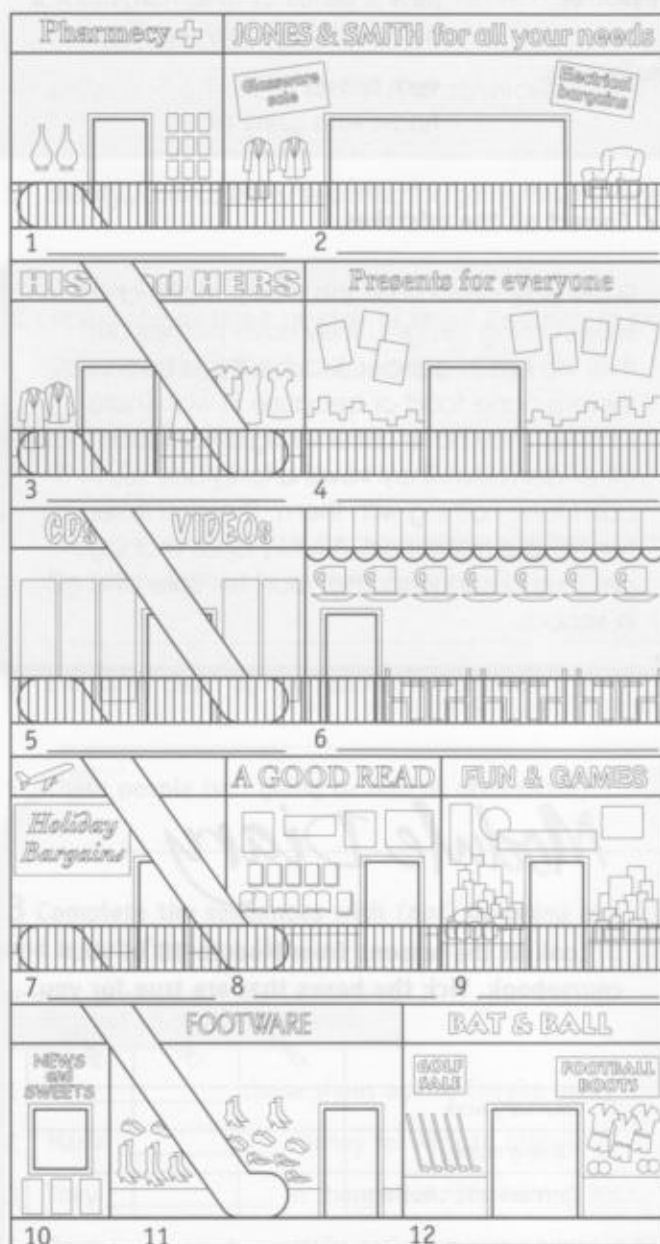


# 14 Shopping

## Warm-up

### 1 Name the places in the shopping centre.

clothes shop, department store, chemist, gift shop, coffee shop, video shop, travel agent, bookshop, toyshop, kiosk, shoe shop, sports shop



### 2 Put these in ranking order, from those you hate doing to those you like doing best. Explain why.

window-shopping      watching golf on TV  
going to the dentist      doing the washing-up  
buying a new jacket

## 40 GRAMMAR

### 1 ★ Predictions with will

Complete the horoscopes with **will** and a verb from the boxes.

ask, get, give, enjoy, meet, take

## Your shopping horoscope for tomorrow by Pandora

- 1 **Aries**  Don't spend too much! You will get a shock when you go to the bank.
- 2 **Taurus**  Go to the joke shop. You will meet somebody special there!
- 3 **Gemini**  Somebody will give you help in a shop. Be kind and help them.
- 4 **Cancer**  Lucky you! Somebody will take you a present from your favourite chocolate shop.
- 5 **Leo**  You will enjoy window-shopping. But don't buy anything.
- 6 **Virgo**  Are you feeling musical? Your best friend will ask you to an interesting new music shop.

buy, discover, get, have, invite, need, tell

- 7 **Libra**  Your friend will tell you about a really cheap clothes shop.
- 8 **Scorpio**  You will discover an amazing new ice cream shop! Don't eat too much!
- 9 **Sagittarius**  You will need problems paying for something. Do you really need it?
- 10 **Capricorn**  Stay at home! You will have something silly if you go to the shops.
- 11 **Aquarius**  Oh dear! You will get annoyed with a very bossy shop assistant.
- 12 **Pisces**  Someone will invite you to a fancy dress party. You will buy to buy a costume.

## 2 ★ Predictions with won't

Match the sentences (1–8) with the predictions (a–h).  
Then write the predictions with *won't* + the verb.

1 I only spoke to her for five minutes.

(b) She won't remember me.

2 I'm no good at tennis.

( ) \_\_\_\_\_

3 He doesn't like me.

( ) \_\_\_\_\_

4 There aren't any clouds in the sky.

( ) \_\_\_\_\_

5 I'm wearing two sweaters.

( ) \_\_\_\_\_

6 He didn't work very hard this year.

( ) \_\_\_\_\_

7 They're always late.

( ) \_\_\_\_\_

8 Don't ask her for money.

( ) \_\_\_\_\_

a (not pass) the exam

b ~~(not remember) me~~

c (not invite) me to his party

d (not arrive) before midnight

e (not rain)

f (not be) cold

g (not lend) you any

h (not win) the match

## 3 ★ Questions and answers with will

Use the cues to write questions about the weather.  
Then answer the questions in your notebook.

### Weather Around The World Tomorrow

Amsterdam  4°C	Moscow  -1°C
Barcelona  15°C	New York  8°C
Cairo  26°C	Paris  7°C
Dublin  6°C	Sydney  33°C
London  5°C	Warsaw  2°C

1 Where (it/be) hottest?

Where will it be hottest tomorrow?

2 (it/rain) in London tomorrow?

\_\_\_\_\_

3 Where (it/snow)?

\_\_\_\_\_

4 (it/be) warm in Cairo?

\_\_\_\_\_

5 What (the weather be) like in New York?

\_\_\_\_\_

6 Which city (have) the coldest weather?

\_\_\_\_\_

7 How many places (have) rain?

\_\_\_\_\_

8 (it/be) cloudy in Barcelona?

\_\_\_\_\_

9 (Dublin/have) wet weather tomorrow?

\_\_\_\_\_

10 What (the temperature/be) in Paris?

\_\_\_\_\_

1 It will be hottest in Sydney tomorrow.

2 Yes, it will rain in London.

## 4 ★ ★ Predictions with will and won't

Complete the predictions with *will* or *won't* and the verbs. Write a tick (✓) next to the predictions if you agree.

In 50 years from now ...

1 There won't be (not/be) any schools.

2 Children \_\_\_\_\_ (study) everything on the Internet.

3 There \_\_\_\_\_ (not/be) any cars in city centres.

4 Cars \_\_\_\_\_ (not/use) petrol.

5 Scientists \_\_\_\_\_ (find) a cure for AIDS and cancer.

6 Computers \_\_\_\_\_ (be) smaller than a watch.

7 Europe \_\_\_\_\_ (have) much hotter weather.

8 People \_\_\_\_\_ (spend) their holidays on Mars.

9 People \_\_\_\_\_ (not/eat) food.

10 They \_\_\_\_\_ (only eat) special pills.

## 41 COMMUNICATION

**1** Choose the correct words to fill the gaps.

check for faults, Do I really need this?, get excellent bargains, good value, at a higher price, the sales price, the same, shopping in the sales, think it is a bargain, when you get home

### Don't get ripped off!

The sales can be fun and you can (1) \_\_\_\_\_. But, be careful! Here are 10 tips for (2) \_\_\_\_\_.

- Ask yourself – Is it (3) \_\_\_\_\_ for money?
- The sales ticket has to give the old price and (4) \_\_\_\_\_.
- The shop has to prove the goods were (5) \_\_\_\_\_ during the last six months.
- Always look carefully at the product and (6) \_\_\_\_\_.
- Your rights as a buyer are (7) \_\_\_\_\_ during the sales as the rest of the year.
- You cannot return something if you don't like it (8) \_\_\_\_\_.
- Don't buy something only because you (9) \_\_\_\_\_.
- Before you buy it, ask yourself – '(10) \_\_\_\_\_'.

**2** Correct the mistakes.



What is Internet shopping? It is basically the same as shopping on telephone but you use computer. You can look at a huge number of websites that offers anyone from CDs to homes and you will receive items you buy by post. Today, Internet shopping has become very sophisticated. You can sit at home and look very careful at films and photographs of the things you want, and you will find a lot of informations. You can also compare prices in your own country, within Europe and across world. When you are completely happy about your order, you have to pay. An important problem is Internet fraud but now there are many ways to make certain that your money or credit card details are safe.

**3** Which items below would you NOT buy on the Internet? Why not?

- |                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 a dictionary             | 5 a new coat               |
| 2 a pair of shoes          | 6 a music centre           |
| 3 a secondhand car         | 7 a DVD                    |
| 4 a weekend trip to London | 8 fruit from a supermarket |

## Skills Corner

### Listening – true/false

(Recording SB page 108, Lesson 42, Speaking Workshop)

Listen to a dialogue in a shop. Are the following sentences true or false?

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> The first skirt costs £20.                                    | 4 <input type="checkbox"/> The second skirt is cheaper than the first one. |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> The girl didn't try on the first skirt.                       | 5 <input type="checkbox"/> The girl wants to buy shoes.                    |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> The shop assistant thinks that the blue skirts are expensive. | 6 <input type="checkbox"/> The girl finally buys a bag and a skirt.        |



## 42 FOCUS ON WRITING

## 1 Write questions to match the answers.

- 1 My sister can't decide which shoes to buy so I get angry. (Why ... ?)
- 2 I like to look for bargains in the market. (Where ... ?)
- 3 I often go window shopping with my friend on Saturdays. (What ... ?)
- 4 We usually go to the supermarket on Friday evenings. (When ... ?)
- 5 No, I don't enjoy crowded department stores. (Do ... ?)
- 6 I never go to the sales. (How ... ?)
- 7 I've got two pairs of trainers. (How ... ?)
- 8 This DVD costs much less than the other one. (How ... ?)

## 2 Punctuation: a formal letter

Write the letter again in your notebook with the correct punctuation.

23 forlan road  
st melons  
cardiff  
cf3 awb  
tel 029 2099 5894  
fax 029 2099 5877

23 september 2005

dear sir or madam

i phoned your shop, Bondings, yesterday and a shop assistant told me to write to the manager.

when i was on holiday in brighton i bought a pair of jeans from Bondings but when i tried them on at home they were too small can i take them back and get a bigger size at Bondings high street shop, here in cardiff, please.

yours truly  
david malone

## 3 Spelling

Use the picture cues to complete the plurals.

1 three scarves



2 cl\_\_\_\_\_



3 forty p\_\_\_\_\_



4 two p\_\_\_\_\_ of je\_\_\_\_\_



5 two cit\_\_\_\_\_



6 three wat\_\_\_\_\_



4 In your notebook, write six predictions about what you think you and your friends *will* or *won't* do when they're older.

I don't think I'll have children.

I think Veronica will be a teacher.

Marck won't stay in Poland.

# Review 14

## GRAMMAR

1 Fill the gaps in the letter with *will/won't* and the correct reason.

Hi Zoe,

Here are some ideas about things to bring with you this weekend. Bring a raincoat because I know it will rain. Don't bring school books because (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to study. Bring a magazine because (2) \_\_\_\_\_. Don't bring sandwiches for the journey because (3) \_\_\_\_\_. Bring your mobile phone because I know (4) \_\_\_\_\_. Don't forget your sleeping bag because (5) \_\_\_\_\_ at the hostel. See you on Friday at Victoria Station.

Love, Emma

- a it/be really useful
- b ~~it/rain~~
- c there/be food on the train
- d there/not/be any blankets
- e you/get bored on the train
- f we/not/have time

2 Complete the sentences with the correct words.

- 1 I \_\_\_\_\_ going to help you.  
a aren't    b won't    c 'm not
- 2 What \_\_\_\_\_ study next year?  
a you're going    b you are going to  
c are you going to
- 3 In the future, there \_\_\_\_\_ traditional schools.  
a aren't    b won't be    c won't
- 4 I won't \_\_\_\_\_ you the end of the story now.  
a to tell    b tell    c telling
- 5 I know it \_\_\_\_\_ be sunny tomorrow.  
a won't    b don't    c isn't

3 Circle the correct verb.

- 1 I'm not going to Izzy's party because I *am not going to/won't* know anybody there.
- 2 I'm really happy! My sister is *going to/will* get married in the summer.
- 3 They *aren't going to/won't* play football. They aren't wearing sports clothes.
- 4 You can't go swimming now. The water is *going to/will* be freezing.
- 5 Smile everyone! Anna is *going to/will* take a photo.

## VOCABULARY

4 Underline the correct preposition.



Jane and Lily were stretched (1) on/out on the sofa looking very bored. Eventually, Lily's mum was fed up (2) with/to all the sighing she heard in the living room. 'Why don't you take the money you got from grandad and get a bus into town?' she said. Jane and Lily smiled (3) at/with each other. Grabbing their coats and mobiles, they pushed combs through their hair, tucked their arms (4) under/into each other and walked to the bus stop. The bus stopped outside Top Kit, their favourite place for cool gear, and the girls laughed as they went into the shop. Lily headed straight (5) by/for the sparkly beaded tops. 'Hey, look at this - it's great!' she said as she held (6) up/on a pink one to herself. 'How much is it?' Jane asked. Lily glanced (7) at/for the ticket. 'Ugh - too much.' 'Well, frankly that top's not brilliant,' Jane said helpfully. 'I think you're more of a jeans and T-shirt kind of girl myself.' 'Yeah, right,' Lily said putting (8) on/back the top on the rail. 'Let's check (9) in/out CD World and see if Peter is working today,' Jane suggested. 'OK but first we could drop into Coffee Magic - it's close to CD World, too.' 'Good idea.' The girls picked up two coffees to go and wandered into the record shop trying to look cool. Lily was excited when she spotted Peter behind the main counter where a long queue was waiting. 'Hi Peter!' Jane yelled. Peter looked (10) up/in. Lily was already sending him a text (11) in/on her mobile and when his own phone rang, he blushed. He was trying to serve his customers, talk to Jane and send a text back (12) for/to Lily. Jane decided to go. 'Why don't you buy that top you saw,' she said to Lily. 'I've got some money I can lend you.' 'You're my best mate,' said Lily giving her a hug - she looked (13) back/over her shoulder and smiled at Peter as they left the store.

# Key Words List

## MODULE 14 SHOPPING

### shops

bookshop, chemist, clothes shop, coffee shop, department store, gift shop, kiosk, newsagent's, record shop, shoe shop, sports shop, supermarket, toyshop, travel agent; Internet shopping, on the Net, shopping centre, shopping mall

### shopping

cent, dollar, euro, pence, pound about/around £5, a bargain, the cost of, expensive, low price, the sales, secondhand, special offer, value for money; brochure, catalogue, magazine, a selection of, ticket, a variety of; buyer, shopaholic, shopper, shopping, window-shopping  
verbs: buy, buy online, check for something, choose from, compare prices, cost, get one free, get ripped off, spend

### a pair of

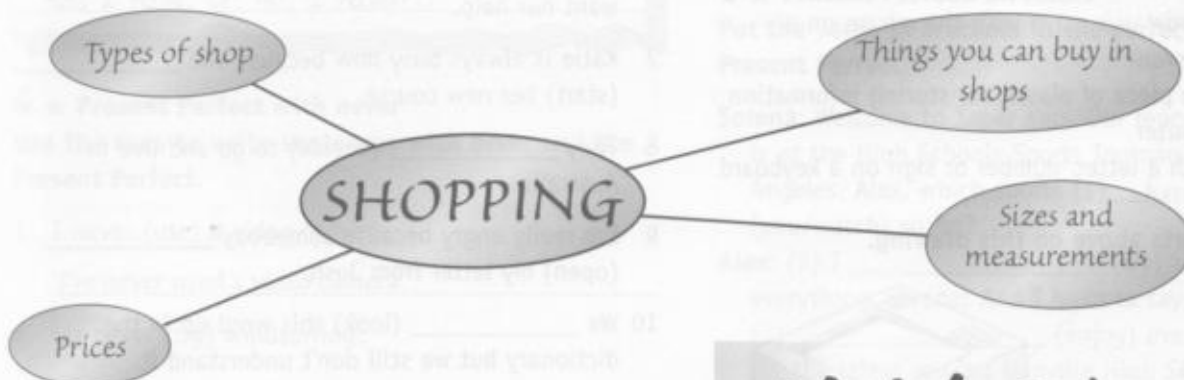
earrings, glasses, gloves, jeans, scissors, shoes, shorts, socks, trainers, trousers, underpants

### sizes

small (S), extra small (XS), medium (M), large (L), extra large (XL), extra extra large (XXL)

### 1 Add these words and phrases to the correct group. Then add two new words or phrases in each group.

corner shop, medium, six euros fifty, large, shopping mall, a pair of trainers, high street shop, three dollars, shorts, a pair of shoes, five pounds twenty



### 2 You can put a pair of in front of which words?

- |            |                          |               |                          |
|------------|--------------------------|---------------|--------------------------|
| 1 jeans    | <input type="checkbox"/> | 6 gloves      | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 scissors | <input type="checkbox"/> | 7 buttons     | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 glasses  | <input type="checkbox"/> | 8 earrings    | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 shirts   | <input type="checkbox"/> | 9 bras        | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 shoes    | <input type="checkbox"/> | 10 underpants | <input type="checkbox"/> |

### 3 Write the short forms for these.

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| 1 I have   | 5 does not |
| 2 is not   | 6 it has   |
| 3 cannot   | 7 will not |
| 4 she will | 8 are not  |

## Module Diary

### 1 Look at the lessons from Module 14 in your coursebook. Tick the boxes that are true for you.

	easy	OK	difficult
40 Joke and party shops			
41 Real or virtual shopping			
42 Communication Workshop			

- Which is your favourite lesson? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you still have difficulty with *will*? Y N
- How often do you use the Mini-dictionary?  
Never Sometimes Often Very often



# 15 Computers

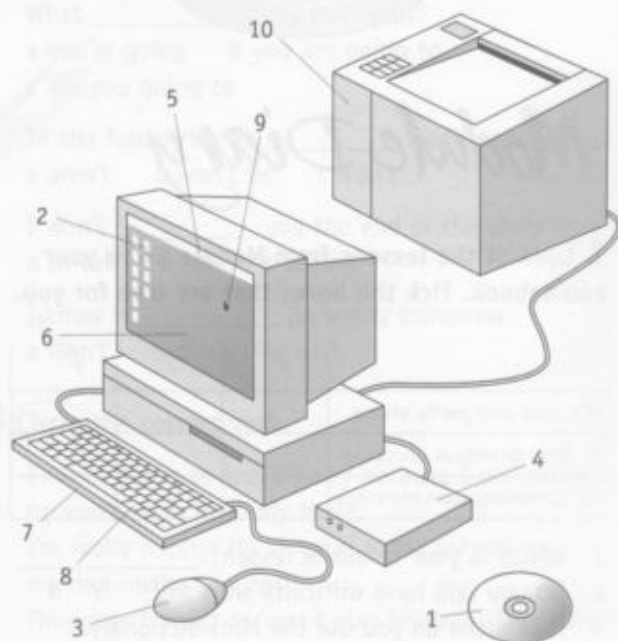
## Warm-up

### 1 Match the words with their meaning.

disk (CD), icon, mouse, modem, menu, desktop, keyboard, key, cursor, printer

- equipment for sending information from one computer to another
- the picture, icons and words on a computer screen
- the row at the top of a computer screen saying what you can do
- a sign on a computer screen that you click on to make it do something
- equipment with letters, numbers and signs you use to work a computer
- the machine that puts words and pictures from your computer on paper
- equipment you press with your finger to click on computer icons
- the small arrow you move with the mouse on a computer screen
- a round, flat piece of plastic for storing information from a computer
- one part with a letter, number or sign on a keyboard

### 2 Label the parts above on this drawing.



### 3 Explain the difference between these computers.

a personal computer (PC)      a laptop

## 43 GRAMMAR

### Present Perfect

#### 1 ★ Regular forms: affirmative

Put the verbs in the Present Perfect.

- My brother has invented (invent) a new drink. Do you want to try it?
- I'm tired. I \_\_\_\_\_ (work) really hard this week.
- My uncle \_\_\_\_\_ (move) to a new house. He lives in Bridge Avenue now.
- Inga's got an excellent holiday job. She \_\_\_\_\_ (earn) £300 this week.
- Paul \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) all over the world. He speaks lots of languages.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ (try) to help him but he doesn't want our help.
- Katie is always busy now because she \_\_\_\_\_ (start) her new course.
- They \_\_\_\_\_ (decide) to go and live in Australia.
- I'm really angry because somebody \_\_\_\_\_ (open) my letter from Josh.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ (look) this word up in the dictionary but we still don't understand it.

#### 2 ★ Regular forms: negative

Complete the sentences with the Present Perfect negative.

- I looked at the website last month but I haven't looked at it this month.
- Martin called me last week but he \_\_\_\_\_ me this week.
- They climbed three mountains last year but this year they \_\_\_\_\_ any.
- Sara played tennis a lot last summer but this summer she \_\_\_\_\_ it once.
- You used the computer last term but you \_\_\_\_\_ it this term.
- They watched TV every day last week but this week they \_\_\_\_\_ it at all.



### 3 ★ Questions with *ever* and short answers

Write the quiz questions in your notebook in the Present Perfect. Then write true answers.

#### **Are you a party animal?**

Have you ever ... ?

- 1 (organise) a surprise party for a friend?
- 2 (invite) more than 30 people to a party?
- 3 (receive) three party invitations on the same day?
- 4 (decide) to have a party at the last minute?
- 5 (play) in a band at a party?
- 6 (invent) a new party game?
- 7 (stay) up all night at a party?

1 Have you ever organised a surprise party for a friend?

Yes, I have. Or: No, I haven't.

### 4 ★ Present Perfect with *never*

Use the cues to write sentences with *never* and the Present Perfect.

- 1 I never (use) a video camera.  
I've never used a video camera.
- 2 Liz never (try) windsurfing.
- 3 They never (walk) up this mountain.
- 4 Carly never (work) in a shop.
- 5 Steve never (play) chess in a tournament.
- 6 We never (travel) by boat.
- 7 I never (look) in my sister's diary.

### 5 ★ ★ Questions with *How many*?

Look at the table. Write questions in your notebook with *How many*? and the Present Perfect. Then write answers like the example.

#### **Hip-hop Clothes Factory New Fashion Collection**

1 Alice	create new designs	5 out of 10
2 Max and Andy	prepare catalogues	2 out of 5
3 Soraya	answer letters	14 out of 20
4 Ivan	test new materials	2 out of 4
5 Emily	develop new products	3 out of 8
6 Bianca	design scarves	4 out of 5

1 Q: How many new designs has Alice created?

A: She has created five. She needs to create five more.

### 6 ★ Present Perfect: all forms

Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form of the Present Perfect.

Serena: Welcome to *Super Kids*. Our reporter Alex Crosby is at the High Schools Sports Tournament in Los Angeles. Alex, which sports (1) have you watched (you/watch) so far?

Alex: (2) I                                  (try) to see a bit of everything, Serena! And I have to say, I (3)                                  (enjoy) every minute. Here are the latest results. Danville High School (4)                                  (receive) two gold medals for athletics. Carlton Hills High School (5)                                  (finish) first in the 200 metres swimming. And finally, the big match between Askew High and Waterville High (6)                                  (end) in a draw.

Serena: (7)                                  (the high jump competition/start) ?

Alex: Yes, it has. Oliver Nolan (8)                                  (jump) three times but he (9)                                  (not/manage) to get a gold medal.

Serena: What (10)                                  (happen) in the girls' diving competition?

Alex: I'm not sure. I (11)                                  (not/study) the scores. I think Natasha Kirilova (12)                                  (score) some very high marks. But Martina Travis (13)                                  (not/start) yet.

## 44 COMMUNICATION

### 1 Giving instructions

Write the instructions under the correct picture. Use the words in *italics* to help you.

#### How to receive emails

- Then you click on the Send and Receive button in the program.
- To receive email, *first* switch on the computer.
- When you see a message, like this – 'You have 2 emails' – you know there are emails for you.
- *Before* you can receive email, you have to start your email program.
- *Lastly*, you can print the emails.
- *After that*, you read the emails by clicking on them. That opens them.



1 To receive email, first switch on the computer.



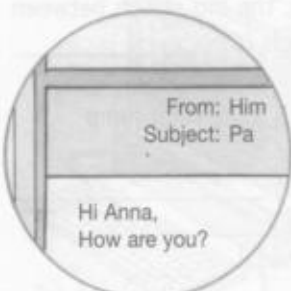
2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_



4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_



6 \_\_\_\_\_

2 The computer words (in *italics*) are all in the wrong sentences. Cross them out and write them in the correct sentences.

- 1 I got a really interesting ~~Internet~~ email from my friend.
- 2 Click on the Internet icon with the keyboard \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Before you print anything check that the email \_\_\_\_\_ is on.
- 4 You can get a lot of information from the mouse \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 The first letter on the screen \_\_\_\_\_ is Q and the last one is M.
- 6 You can see a lot of icons on the printer \_\_\_\_\_.

3 Circle the correct preposition.

- 1 When you have sent the email, please switch *out/off* the computer.
- 2 Click *on/in* that icon to empty the recycle bin.
- 3 There is so much information *on/in* the Internet.
- 4 Did you plug *in/to* your printer?
- 5 Please, turn the volume *down/up*! It's very noisy.
- 6 Remember to take the disk *out/out of* the modem.
- 7 Press this key to change *to/for* capital letters.
- 8 Always sit *at/on* your desk with your back straight.
- 9 Sign *in/up* for our free trial of the best ever email server.
- 10 Get *on/at* Broadband and use your phone and email at the same time.

## Skills Corner

### Speaking – photo description

Look at the photo and answer the questions.

- 1 Why do you think the students are so excited?
- 2 How do people you know use computers in their everyday life?



## 45 FOCUS ON WRITING

### 1 Punctuation

Write these sentences again in your notebook with capital letters and the correct punctuation.

- 1 there isnt a better computer in the shops than the abd superfast computer
- 2 what do you do after youve put the disk in
- 3 first you click on start and then open the email icon after that you have to wait a bit and finally you click on 'send/receive'
- 4 ive got a new mobile phone and its better than my dads
- 5 can we get stereophonics latest CD cheaper on the internet
- 6 more than 200000 families are on broadband in brighton
- 7 she bought a beautiful long cotton dress
- 8 peters cd has a song by shania twain called *that doesnt impress me much*

### 2 Pronunciation

Put these words in the correct box. Check in your Mini-dictionary.

thanks, then, with, healthy, throw, thin, than, both, sunbathe, through, that, eleventh, thing, third, brother, athlete, there, throw, birthday, either, cloth, north, northern, mouth, theatre

We say <b>th</b> as in <b>the</b> /ð/	We say <b>th</b> as in <b>three</b> /θ/

### 3 Linking

Use the words in the box to fill in the gaps.

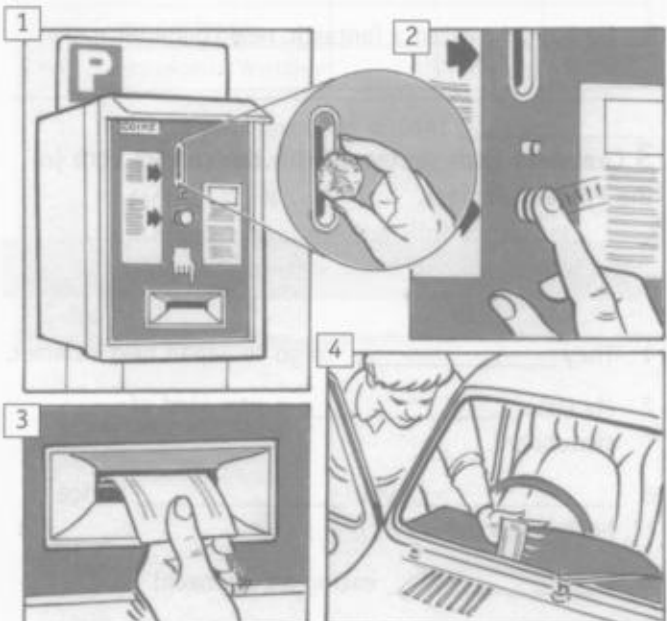
and, before, but, finally, first, for example, however, maybe, or, too

So, you want to buy a personal computer? Well, here's my advice. (1) \_\_\_\_\_, decide what you want to use the computer for. Do you want to surf the Internet, send (2) \_\_\_\_\_ receive emails (3) \_\_\_\_\_ play computer games? (4) \_\_\_\_\_ you want to write your homework on it. There's no point in buying a computer that doesn't allow you to do the things you want (5) \_\_\_\_\_ you have to think of new tasks you can do later, (6) \_\_\_\_\_. (7) \_\_\_\_\_, you may want to download music from the Net. (8) \_\_\_\_\_, don't spend a lot of money on a powerful computer that has options you have no interest in. Make a list of the reasons why you need a computer (9) \_\_\_\_\_ you go shopping. (10) \_\_\_\_\_, discuss your needs with the shop assistant.

### 4 Writing instructions

Use the picture cues to write instructions for using this parking ticket machine. Write four sentences in your notebook. Start like this:

1 First, put a coin ...



# Review 15

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Choose the correct alternative

- 1 \_\_\_\_ you answered his letter?  
a Did    b Have    c Was
- 2 We're tired. We've \_\_\_\_ all the way from the station.  
a walking    b walk    c walked
- 3 They've \_\_\_\_ tried Thai food.  
a ever    b never    c didn't
- 4 Fantastic! We have \_\_\_\_ a goal.  
a scored    b score    c scoring
- 5 She \_\_\_\_ phoned the restaurant.  
a didn't    b hasn't    c won't

### 2 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- 1 Have ever you tried bungee jumping?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 What you decided about next weekend?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I haven't never appeared on television.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Why he has stopped writing to me?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 He has to created a fantastic new computer game.  
\_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Complete each sentence with the correct verb in the Present Perfect.

never try, not discover, decide, ever watch, design

- 1 They \_\_\_\_ to go to Japan next summer.
- 2 My sister \_\_\_\_ a new kind of skateboard.
- 3 \_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_ an ice hockey match?
- 4 I \_\_\_\_ eating a cockroach!
- 5 Doctors \_\_\_\_ a cure for AIDS.

## VOCABULARY

### 4 Put the correct form of the verbs in the gaps.



be, can, discuss, excuse, help, look, make, need, see, think, use, want

**Customer:** \_\_\_\_\_ me.

**Assistant:** How can I \_\_\_\_\_?

**Customer:** Well, I'm \_\_\_\_\_ of buying a PC.

**Assistant:** \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ at our latest models?

**Customer:** Not yet. But first I \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ with you why I \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ it.

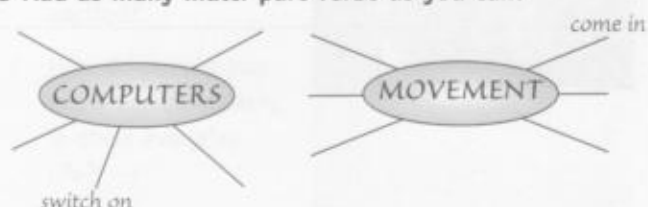
**Assistant:** Oh, good. I \_\_\_\_\_ that you \_\_\_\_\_ a list. \_\_\_\_\_ I read it?

**Customer:** Of course. Here you \_\_\_\_\_.

### 5 Write *a*, *an*, *the* or *nothing* in the gaps.

Broadband is (1) \_\_\_\_\_ method of sending and receiving information by computer across (2) \_\_\_\_\_ high-speed network that provides (3) \_\_\_\_\_ fastest way of connecting your computer to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ Internet. Before (5) \_\_\_\_\_ Broadband, we used ordinary telephone lines. Not only can we now get to (6) \_\_\_\_\_ website more quickly but we are always connected and there are no extra costs for sending or receiving (7) \_\_\_\_\_ email, playing games on (8) \_\_\_\_\_ Net or browsing (9) \_\_\_\_\_ websites – and any phone line in your home is free for you to use.

### 6 Add as many multi-part verbs as you can.





# Key Words List

## MODULE 15 COMPUTERS

### computers

laptop, personal computer

### computer parts

arrow, cursor, desktop, disk, icon, key, keyboard, menu, modem, mouse, printer, screen

### using a computer

**facilities:** Broadband, email, the Internet (the Net), program  
**verbs:** browse, click on, connect to, download, find out about, operate something, pick up an email, plug something in, press (a key), program, put (information) in, send/receive emails/messages, surf, switch off/on, take (information) out

### machines

camera, car, CD player, computer, digital camera, fridge, mobile phone, robot, transport

### communicating

eyes – see, ears – hear, mouth – speak, brain/head – think/move, legs/arms/brain – move; hands/fingers – feel, touch  
G3 mobile phones

### linking

firstly, secondly ..., finally

### 1 Underline the correct words.

## Love your

# G3

Companies

(1) *all/every* over the world are prepared to become bankrupt  
(2) *at/in* the race  
(3) *of/to* control the market for G3 mobile phones. These phones are expensive now (4) *and/but* they (5) *get/are getting* cheaper and cheaper. Why? Because (6) *everyone/someone* thinks they need them and people everywhere want one. (7) *Do/Did* you know what these phones can do? Well, firstly, they can (8) *make/take* photos and send them with text messages. You can even add music! However, that (9) *is/isn't* all. The beauty of this fringe technology is that there's practically (10) *anything/nothing* that you can't do! (11) *For/As* example, you can read and send your emails, get (12) *on/in* the Internet and download web pages or music. And finally, these new phones allow you to (13) *watch/watching* DVDs or films taken (14) *from/by* the Net. G3 has revolutionised our way of communicating. Want one?

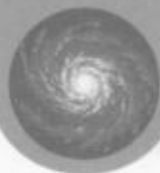


## Module Diary

1 Look at the lessons from Module 15 in your coursebook. Tick the boxes that are true for you.

	easy	OK	difficult
43 Robotics			
44 Computer magic			
45 Communication Workshop			

- Which is your favourite lesson? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you still have difficulty with the Present Perfect? Y N
- How often do you use the Mini-dictionary?  
Never Sometimes Often Very often

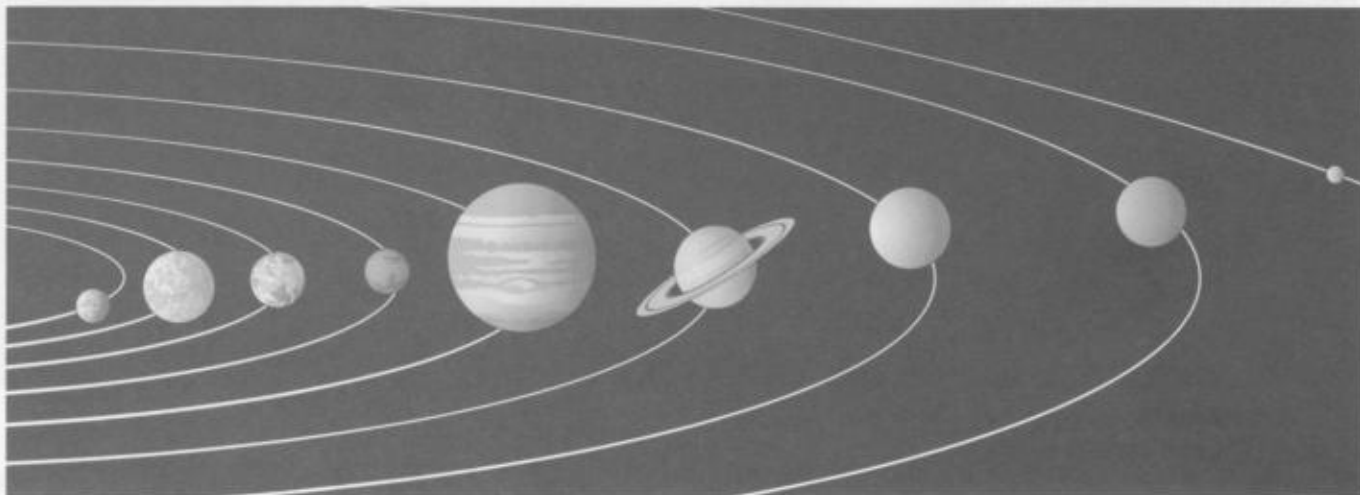


# 16 Space

## Warm-up

### 1 Space quiz

Label the planets in the drawing below.



### 2 Add the words to complete the text.

away, beyond, the biggest, is circling, comets, the farthest, solar system, suggests

Is there another planet in our (1) \_\_\_\_\_? Scientists think a very large object (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the Sun many millions of light years (3) \_\_\_\_\_ Pluto, the planet that is (4) \_\_\_\_\_ from the Sun. This object could be about three times the size of Jupiter, (5) \_\_\_\_\_ planet in the solar system. Why do scientists think this is possible?

There are lumps of ice and rock, called (6) \_\_\_\_\_, in space and some are travelling round Pluto. As they go round, suddenly they move in an unusual direction and this (7) \_\_\_\_\_ that another larger planet is pulling them (8) \_\_\_\_\_ from Pluto when they pass it.

## 46 GRAMMAR

### Present Perfect

#### 1 ★ Irregular forms (affirmative)

Complete each sentence with the correct verb in the Present Perfect.

break, buy, do, eat, go, lose, meet, see, spend, write

- 1 I 've bought a new computer game. Do you want to try it?
- 2 They \_\_\_\_\_ to America. They'll be back in July.
- 3 He \_\_\_\_\_ his glasses. He sat on them.
- 4 We \_\_\_\_\_ the keys. We can't get into the house.
- 5 I \_\_\_\_\_ my homework. Let's go out now.
- 6 She \_\_\_\_\_ the letter. I'm going to post it for her now.
- 7 We \_\_\_\_\_ that film. We don't want to see it again.
- 8 You \_\_\_\_\_ my cousin. She's called Georgia.
- 9 Somebody \_\_\_\_\_ all my chocolates. I'm really angry.
- 10 I \_\_\_\_\_ all my money. Can you lend me some?

## 2 ★ Irregular forms: negative

Choose the correct cues to write answers in the Present Perfect.

- What's her new address?  
(b) I'm afraid she hasn't given it to me.
  - Is the pasta nice?  
( ) It looks nice but \_\_\_\_\_
  - Are your new shoes comfortable?  
( ) I don't know because \_\_\_\_\_
  - Are Lucy and Jack having a good holiday?  
( ) Probably but \_\_\_\_\_
  - What's India like?  
( ) \_\_\_\_\_
  - What do you think of the new Beyoncé CD?  
( ) \_\_\_\_\_
  - Did they like the Star Wars films?  
( ) \_\_\_\_\_
- I (not/be) there.
  - ~~she (not/give)~~ it to me.
  - They (not/see) any of them.
  - I (not/eat) any of it.
  - I (not/wear) them.
  - they (not/write) to us.
  - I (not /hear) it.

## 3 ★ Questions with ever

Write the quiz questions in your notebook in the Present Perfect. Then write true answers.

### How lazy are you?

Have you ever ... ?

- (pay) a friend to do your homework?
- (spend) the whole weekend in bed?
- (go) to the shops in your pyjamas?
- (fall) asleep in class?
- (leave) the washing-up for someone else to do?
- (do) your homework five minutes before the lesson?
- (eat) breakfast, lunch and supper in front of the TV?

1 Have you ever paid a friend to do your homework?

Yes, I have. Or No, I haven't.

## 4 ★ Present Perfect with just

The sentences describe this picture. Use the cues to write sentences with *just* and the Present Perfect.



- Xylla and Zarga just (begin) eating their lunch.  
Xylla and Zarga have just begun eating their lunch.
- Magon just (take) a shower.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- C.C.3 just (catch) a ball.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Captain Miraxa just (find) some space money.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 5 ★ ★ All forms

Complete the dialogues with the correct form of the Present Perfect.

- A: I can't read the board.  
B: Have you lost (you/lose) your glasses?  
A: No, I haven't (No). Jack has just sat (just/sit) on them.
- A: Let's go for a walk.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (it/stop) raining?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_ (No). But I \_\_\_\_\_ (just/find) my umbrella. \_\_\_\_\_ (you/find) yours?
- A: The photocopier \_\_\_\_\_ (just/stop) working.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (you/push) the green button?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_ (Yes).  
B: How many copies \_\_\_\_\_ (you/make)?  
A: Ninety-eight.  
B: Perhaps you \_\_\_\_\_ (use) up all the paper.
- A: They \_\_\_\_\_ (just/repair) my mobile phone.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (you/try) it?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_ (Yes).  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (you/call) Jack?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_ (No). I \_\_\_\_\_ (send) him a text.
- A: It's my mother's birthday tomorrow.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (you/buy) her a present?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_ (Yes). And I \_\_\_\_\_ (make) her a cake.

## 47 COMMUNICATION

### 1 Expressing opinions

Write *your* opinion for statements 1 to 8. Use the sentences below or your own sentences. Do not use the same sentence more than twice.

Yes, there's proof of that.

I think that's mad!

I don't believe that.

I believe that's true.

Personally, I don't believe a word of that!

That's not true.

I'm sorry but I don't agree.

I think that's probably true.

1 There is water on Mars.

Yes, there's proof of that.

2 Pete Sampras is the best tennis player of all time.

3 A lot of people have seen and talked to aliens.

4 The people on Earth are the only people in the universe.

5 I think that there are aliens on Earth now, at this minute.

6 The best food in the world is in my country.

7 The nearest planet to the Earth is Pluto.

8 A lot of people are frightened of aliens.

### 2 Prove it!

Choose your opinion and then explain your opinion giving arguments for or against.

1 There are aliens in space.

a impossible b possible c probable d definite

2 Ghosts exist.

a impossible b possible c probable d definite

3 Superstitions are real.

a impossible b possible c probable d definite

4 UFOs sometimes visit our planet.

a impossible b possible c probable d definite

### 3 Circle the correct prepositions in this article.

Aliens have been (1) *in/on* the news this week. In the news story, aliens came (2) *to/at* Earth to give medical tests to people. But there are a lot of planets (3) *on/in* the solar system and the aliens' spaceship landed (4) *at/on* Mars, when they wanted to go to Earth. They did the medical tests and their spaceship sent (5) *back/from* pictures (6) *to/for* their planet. But the pictures were of people from Mars, not Earth. They all had green faces and six eyes. Aliens make mistakes, too.



## Skills Corner

### Writing – a letter

Write a letter to the editor of a newspaper in which you describe a UFO sighting. Write about:

- where and when you saw the UFO,
- what it looked like and what it did,
- how you felt,
- what evidence you have that you saw the UFO.





## 48 FOCUS ON WRITING

1 Put the punctuation and capital letters into this report.

## Holidays in space soon

where are you going for your holidays next year well maybe you are planning to fly to another country sir richard branson the british owner of virgin airways wants to bring space travel to ordinary people at prices they can afford he thinks he can do this in the next two or three years

he said im trying to make sure that people from all over the world can go into space he said he wants to bring space tourism to everyone

the race to operate the first space trip for passengers has developed very quickly in 1996 there was an announcement of a £5 million prize (about € 7 million) for the first company to build and launch a spacecraft carrying passengers 100 kilometres above the Earth it has to return them safely and then successfully repeat the trip two weeks later twenty-four teams from many countries have registered for the challenge

but andrew nahum at the science museum warned that space travel can be uncomfortable passengers have to cope with weightlessness space sickness and strange vacuum toilets he thinks tourism is the wrong word and he described the journeys as more like an extreme sport

2 Choose a linking word to fill the gaps.

also, and, because, but, however, too

- 1 I enjoyed some stories \_\_\_\_\_ others were a little boring.
- 2 I'm not going to wait \_\_\_\_\_ I don't think he wants to see me.
- 3 I liked her last CD. The one before that was \_\_\_\_\_ quite good.
- 4 If you take a good map \_\_\_\_\_ look carefully, you won't get lost.
- 5 He can score goals. He defends well, \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 She promised to come early. \_\_\_\_\_, she was late again.

## Language Problem Solving 4

## AUXILIARIES

1 B always agrees with A. Write B's answers, using *So/Neither + auxiliary + I*.

- 1 A: I'm interested in sport.  
B: So am I.
- 2 A: I can never remember telephone numbers.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 A: I was up at 5 o'clock this morning.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 A: I haven't bought Gerry a birthday present.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 A: I really enjoyed the film last night.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 A: I didn't eat a lot of fruit and salad.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 A: I love chocolate.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 A: I don't walk very fast.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_.

## ZERO CONDITIONAL

1 Match the sentence halves. Then write the sentences in full putting the verbs in the Present Simple. Add commas where necessary.

- 1 ( e ) If a player (hit) the ball into the net
  - 2 ( ) I (feel) hungry by ten o'clock
  - 3 ( ) If I (drink) coffee at night
  - 4 ( ) Dogs (get) fat
  - 5 ( ) If she (not/understand) a word
  - 6 ( ) You (have to) work hard
  - 7 ( ) If you (leave) the dog in the kitchen
  - 8 ( ) If you (not/shut) the windows
- a birds (fly) in  
b it always (eat) all the food  
c if I (not/eat) breakfast  
d she always (look) in the dictionary  
e the other player (get) points  
f I (not/sleep)  
g if you (not/take) them for walks  
h if you (want) to get rich
- 1 If a player hits the ball into the net, the other player gets points.

# Review 16

## GRAMMAR

**1 Complete the sentences by writing the verbs in the Present Perfect.**

- I \_\_\_\_\_ (just/buy) a blue mobile phone.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ever/see) a solar eclipse?
- My brother \_\_\_\_\_ (never/be) to a planetarium.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ (not/hear) their new CD yet.
- How many words \_\_\_\_\_ (you/write) for your history project?
- Veronica \_\_\_\_\_ (not/have) her breakfast yet.
- What \_\_\_\_\_ (they/do) to the computer?
- Where \_\_\_\_\_ (I/leave) my keys?
- Simon \_\_\_\_\_ (not/meet) Andrea's parents yet.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ever/eat) fish for breakfast?

**2 Complete the sentences with the correct words.**

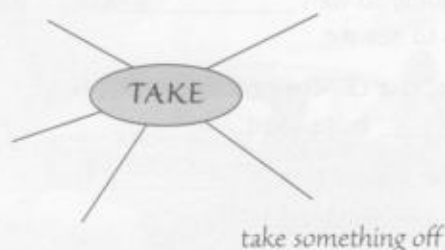
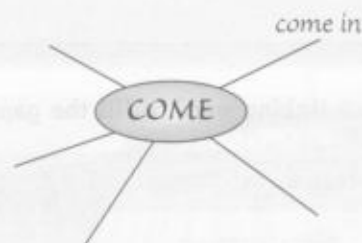
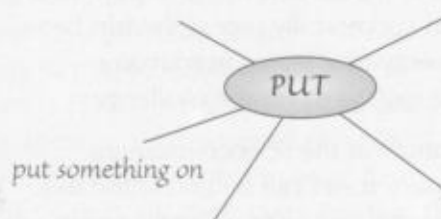
- \_\_\_\_\_ taken my umbrella. Was it you?  
a Anyone has    b Someone have    c Someone has
- 'I haven't bought my ticket yet.' '\_\_\_\_\_.'  
a So have I    b Neither have I    c I haven't
- \_\_\_\_\_ ever seen the film *Casablanca*?  
a Did you    b Will you    c Have you
- 'Maria is going to sell her bike.' '\_\_\_\_\_ Gina.'  
a So is    b So does    c So will
- \_\_\_\_\_ never spoken to a famous person.  
a I've    b I    c I haven't
- 'Have you found your glasses?' 'No, \_\_\_\_\_.'  
a I didn't    b I haven't    c they weren't
- She feels sick if she \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of chocolate.  
a ate    b eating    c eats
- She's never \_\_\_\_\_ that before.  
a doing    b did    c done
- Have you ever \_\_\_\_\_ to California?  
a went    b going    c been
- If I drink a lot of coffee, \_\_\_\_\_.  
a I don't sleep    b I'm not sleeping    c I didn't sleep

## VOCABULARY

**3 Read across (→) and down (↓) to find nine solar system words.**

m	e	r	c	u	r	y
o	m	a	r	s	s	t
o	v	l	p	j	u	e
n	e	p	t	u	n	e
g	n	l	c	p	l	r
b	u	u	c	i	l	r
f	s	t	d	t	h	t
z	h	o	n	e	b	h
s	a	t	u	r	n	k

**4 Add as many prepositions as you can to make multi-part verbs.**



## Use of English

## 1 Sentence transformation

Write each sentence again so that it is similar to the first sentence. Use the opening words to start your sentence.

- 1 One way of helping people in need is to organise a concert.

Some charities organise \_\_\_\_\_

- 2 I'd like to ask you to send me an information brochure as soon as possible.

Could you \_\_\_\_\_

- 3 Madrid is the only place in Spain that I have visited.

I haven't visited \_\_\_\_\_

- 4 Travel between Europe and Australia is still rather difficult.

It is still \_\_\_\_\_

- 5 After she went to Paris, Pamela visited Rome.

Before she visited \_\_\_\_\_

- 6 I have never taken part in a stranger competition than the three-legged race in Bournemouth last summer.

The three-legged race in Bournemouth last summer was \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Cloze

Read the text below and fill in the blanks with an appropriate word. Use one word for each blank.

**Mysteries of Roswell**

The Roswell crash happened many years (1) \_\_\_\_\_ but it is still one of the most important and famous UFO stories. Roswell is a town (2) \_\_\_\_\_ New Mexico in the USA. It (3) \_\_\_\_\_ just another small, unimportant town until July 1947. A local farmer, William Brazel, was checking his fields after a terrible storm. He found some pieces of metal. He thought they were (4) \_\_\_\_\_ a plane crash. He took the metal (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the police. The police then (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the metal pieces to the military.

The military made an exciting discovery. The metal could not be broken or burned. There was also some strange writing on the metal. They decided that the metal (7) \_\_\_\_\_ not from Earth. In their opinion, it was (8) \_\_\_\_\_ a UFO.

But a few weeks (9) \_\_\_\_\_, the military changed their story. They said that the metal was from a military plane.

For many years, the US government refused to give out (10) \_\_\_\_\_ information about the Roswell crash. For years, experts have tried to (11) \_\_\_\_\_ out what really happened at Roswell. To this day, it (12) \_\_\_\_\_ still a mystery.

## 3 Verb transformation

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- Last summer, I \_\_\_\_\_ (write) a book about UFOs.
- Scientists \_\_\_\_\_ (not yet find) a cure for malaria.
- Jane \_\_\_\_\_ (see) a strange object in the sky last Tuesday night.
- \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) the programme about space exploration last night?
- Sometimes I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) my friends after school.
- \_\_\_\_\_ you ever \_\_\_\_\_ (try) ballroom dancing?

## 4 Word formation

Complete the sentences. Use the words in CAPITALS to form a verb, noun, adjective or adverb that fits the gap.

- Andrew is very \_\_\_\_\_ (PRACTICE) and hard-working.
- Animal \_\_\_\_\_ (PROTECT) is an important cause.
- I saw an interesting \_\_\_\_\_ (DOCUMENT) on TV last night.
- Katerina likes to play \_\_\_\_\_ (PRACTICE) jokes on her friends.
- Last month, Carlos \_\_\_\_\_ (ORGANISATION) a charity run to raise money.
- At the end of the marathon, most people ran very \_\_\_\_\_ (SLOW).
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (VISITOR) my grandmother every Thursday.
- Roswell became \_\_\_\_\_ (FAME) in 1947.

## Speaking

### Photo description

Describe the picture. Answer the following questions:

- Are these people in a good mood?  
Why do you think so?
- How can we be useful and help people in need?

#### TIP

- Think about each question carefully. What is the aim of each question?
- Give your opinion about what is happening in the picture.
- Relate the picture to your own life.

#### USEFUL PHRASES

- In the picture ...; there is/are ...; in the middle of the picture ...; in the background/foreground ...; on the left/on the right ...
- Yes, I think they are because ... (they are smiling); They look happy because ...
- I think we can ...; It is also a good idea to ...

## Reading

1 Read the text on the right. Decide if sentences 1–6 are true or false. For question 7, choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

- ☐ In Ben's professional life there are not many opportunities to save somebody's life.
- ☐ On that particular day in May last year Ben finished work early and hurried home.
- ☐ Ben saw the fire and then the explosion followed.
- ☐ Ben didn't go away although he wanted to.
- ☐ The boy ran to the window and shouted for help.
- ☐ Ben didn't wait for the boy's family to say 'thank you'.
- What is the best title for this text?  
A A Lucky Meeting  
B A Stranger in the Night  
C An Ordinary Hero  
D An Easy Escape



**B**en Smithson is a waiter who did something extraordinary: he saved somebody's life. It happened in May last year.

Ben finished his busy day at a restaurant in the centre of Manchester and left for home. It was already late at night and there were not many people in the streets. Ben walked quickly towards his home, which was not far from his place of work.

Suddenly, he heard a noise from a house on his left. The sound was followed by a loud explosion and, the next moment, the house burst into flames. There were horrible sounds all round: windows cracking, walls collapsing. Ben's first reaction was to run away but somehow he couldn't. Instead, he moved even closer and looked into the house. Then he saw him: a small boy in pyjamas struggling to escape from under pieces of furniture and rubble in the downstairs sitting room. Ben knew what to do. His reaction was quick. He rushed into the burning house. He couldn't see anything and the heat was horrible but he somehow managed to find the child and dragged him outside. There were some members of the boy's family out there, and Ben simply left the child and went home. It all happened so quickly that the family had no time to thank him.

Now, one year on, Ben has just met the boy and his family. They want to thank him but all he has to say is, 'I didn't do anything special. It was a natural thing to do.' This only proves that Ben Smithson is a truly ordinary hero.



**2** Read the text below. Match the people (1-6) with the descriptions of how they shop (A-H). There are two extra descriptions.

This person:

- A ☐ likes shopping in the company of other people.
- B ☐ likes shopping in local shops only.
- C ☐ doesn't like shopping close to where he/she lives.
- D ☐ doesn't like shopping at all.
- E ☐ doesn't like asking people for help.
- F ☐ likes shopping for some things only.
- G ☐ doesn't like buying some kinds of clothes.
- H ☐ likes buying nice things to wear.

## What kind of shopper are you?

We're asking six different individuals about their shopping habits, likes and dislikes. Read and decide what kind of shopper you are!

**1**

**Barry:** Generally, I hate shopping. I don't go shopping for food because my parents do it once a week. I don't shop for clothes because it's so boring! If I need something, I just ask my mother or my brother. The only thing I buy from time to time is a chocolate bar.

**2**

**Jack:** I like shopping in small corner shops; I hate shopping in big supermarkets. In small shops, the atmosphere is quite different: everybody knows you and shopping is pleasant and easy. But in a huge supermarket you are just another anonymous customer, not a friend.

**3**

**Lena:** I must say I just love shopping, especially for clothes. I can spend long hours walking around the shops and looking for something nice. I also love trying things on, and perhaps not buying them at all! The best thing I've bought recently is this skirt. Isn't it lovely?

**4**

**Madge:** Do I like shopping? It depends. I like shopping for food because I love cooking. It's great to choose fresh vegetables and plan what dish to prepare from them. But I don't like shopping for clothes. I never find anything special. Shops are full of useless clothes, really!

**5**

**David:** I can go shopping for anything but only if my friends go with me. I like asking people for advice, talking and laughing together. But if I'm alone, shopping is a nightmare. I can never find what I want and then I usually call somebody and ask them to come to the rescue!

**6**

**Carol:** If you ask me where I buy things, I usually say, 'Not here!'. I've got my favourite shops in many countries across Europe. I always buy bags and shoes in Italy, clothes in France and cars in Germany. But I shop for fruit and vegetables just round the corner, because they are the best.

**3** Read the text below. Choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

## Do you believe in fairies?

Well, a friend of mine, Ron Black, probably does. He has just published a book on fairies and their secret lives. In his book he is trying to prove that fairies exist and live everywhere around us. There are different types of fairies. Some of them are good and they always help people. Other fairies are very hard to please. When they get angry, they can even steal a human child or make you very ill.

Fairies live not just under flowers and leaves in gardens, but also in our homes. There was a custom in some countries to leave something to eat and drink in the corners where people thought the fairies were the most active. Today, as Ron writes, people forget to feed fairies properly. That's why there are so many wars and conflicts in the world.

But does Ron really believe in fairies? Has he ever seen one? When I ask such questions, he only smiles. Then he takes out a plan of his house and shows me where they live in his place: brownies in the bathroom, goblins in the kitchen and pixies in the bedroom upstairs. So who knows? The next time I've got a headache, I will remember to leave some milk in the corner of my bathroom. 😊

- 1 Ron Black wrote his book to
  - A describe one typical fairy.
  - B prove the existence of fairies.
  - C characterise good fairies.
  - D detail the bad luck brought by some fairies.
- 2 The old custom shows that
  - A fairies in the past were more active than today.
  - B people in the past weren't very serious.
  - C wars happen when fairies are hungry.
  - D people once believed in fairies.
- 3 In Ron's home
  - A there are three types of fairies.
  - B brownies are the most active.
  - C one type of fairy lives downstairs.
  - D the fairies want a lot of food.
- 4 The author's final comment shows that
  - A she has always believed in fairies.
  - B she doesn't want to hurt Ron.
  - C her headache is really strong.
  - D she thinks Ron may be right.

## Listening

(Recording SB page 97, Module 13, Warm-up, Exercise 2)

**Listen to three people talking about helping other people. Are the sentences (1–6) true or false? You will hear the recording twice.**

- 1 ☐ The first person collects money once or twice a year.
- 2 ☐ The first person collects money at his/her friends' homes.
- 3 ☐ The second person plays an instrument in an orchestra.
- 4 ☐ The second person sometimes plays in concerts at school to collect money for charities.
- 5 ☐ The third person likes to help the environment.
- 6 ☐ The third person's local river is never very clean.

### TIP

- Read the sentences before you listen.
- Remember that in tests of this type the questions are in the same order as the information in the recording.
- Pay attention to the wording of the sentences. Sometimes one short phrase or word makes the sentence false.
- Listen to the recording and decide if the sentences are true or false. When you listen for the second time, check your answers.
- Remember! Don't leave any question unanswered. If you are not sure, guess.

## Writing

### 1 Short text

**You are at a language camp in Brighton. Tomorrow you are playing a charity basketball game. Write a notice/advert.**

- Give your notice/advert a title which will draw people's attention.
- Write when and where the match is going to take place.
- Say who can take part in the match.
- Give the price of a ticket and say where to buy it.

### TIP

- A notice is a short text.
- You can find an example of a notice and some useful phrases on page 102 of the Students' Book.

### USEFUL PHRASES

- Basketball match of the century!
- Come to see our stars tomorrow in/at ... (place) at ... (hour)
- Everybody is welcome .../If you want to play, contact ...
- Tickets at ... (price) to buy ... (when and where)

### 2 Long text

**You bought a television two weeks ago and now it isn't working properly. Write a letter of complaint to the store where you bought the TV.**

- Start your letter in an appropriate way and explain why you are writing.
- Say when and where you bought the TV, how much it cost and the length of the guarantee.
- Explain what is wrong with the TV.
- Say what you want to happen.
- Finish the letter in an appropriate way.

### TIP

- A letter of complaint is a formal piece of writing. You can find an example of a letter of complaint on page 116 of the Students' Book.
- Use appropriate formal phrases to start and finish your letter.
- Write in full sentences.
- Remember to use no more than 120–150 words.

### USEFUL PHRASES

- Dear Sir or Madam; I am writing to ...
- I bought the TV ... (when and where); It cost ...; It has a ... (how long) guarantee
- There is no sound/the screen is blank/there are some strange noises coming from ...
- I hope you will refund my money; I look forward to hearing from you; Yours faithfully

# Key Words List

## MODULE 16 SPACE

### the universe

comet, crater (on the Moon), galaxy, meteor, the Milky Way, the Moon, a moon (on Jupiter, etc.), planet, shooting star, solar eclipse, the solar system, space, star, the Sun; astronomer, astronomy

### the planets

the Earth, Jupiter, Mars, Mercury, Neptune, Pluto, Saturn, Uranus, Venus

### space travel

colony (in space), flight, light year, rover, space exploration, space sickness, spacecraft, spaceship, take-off, vacuum toilet, weightlessness

verbs: circle (a planet), land (on the Moon), launch (a rocket), pass through (the atmosphere), send (a spacecraft) to ... , take off

### science fiction

alien, signal (from space), UFO (Unidentified Flying Object)

### expressing opinions

be for/against something; I agree/don't agree/disagree, I believe/don't believe ... , I think/don't think ... , be true/not true, not believe a word; proof, reason impossible, possible, probable, definite; probably, definitely

### opposites

be against/for, agree/disagree, always/never, appear/disappear, attractive/unattractive, common/uncommon, complete/incomplete, comprehensible/incomprehensible, correct/incorrect, cover/uncover, different from/similar to, fasten/unfasten, fit/unfit, forget/remember, honest/dishonest, ill/well, important/unimportant, inside/outside, intelligent/unintelligent, pleasant/unpleasant, polite/impolite, possible/impossible, sick/well, straight/curly, thin/fat, true/untrue

## 1 Choose words to fill the gaps.

at all times, the atmosphere, coming round, countdown, everyone, fasten, flight, in front of, pill, take-off, that's all for now, until

'Good morning, (1) \_\_\_\_\_. My name is Maria Braun and I'm your captain for this (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to the Moon. Our journey is expected to take three days and ten hours. Your steward is (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to give you a (4) \_\_\_\_\_ and you can sleep as our spacecraft passes through (5) \_\_\_\_\_. So, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ your seat belts and the straps over your shoulders ready for (7) \_\_\_\_\_. When you wake up, we have breakfast ready and there is a wide choice of films and television programmes on the screen (8) \_\_\_\_\_ you. Please keep your belt and straps on (9) \_\_\_\_\_. Personal stewards will empty your vacuum toilets and help you to wash. It isn't possible to change your clothes (10) \_\_\_\_\_ we are in a stable orbit. If you need more information, ask your steward. Well, (11) \_\_\_\_\_. I hope you enjoy the flight. Control has just given us permission to go and (12) \_\_\_\_\_ begins in ten minutes.'

## Module Diary

1 Look at the lessons from Module 16 in your coursebook. Tick the boxes that are true for you.

	easy	OK	difficult
46 Alien life			
47 True stories			
48 Communication Workshop			

- Which is your favourite lesson? \_\_\_\_\_
- Is the Present Perfect still difficult for you?  
Y N
- How often do you use the Mini-dictionary?  
Never Sometimes Often Very often

# Mini-Grammar Index

[CAPITALS = main sections of the Mini-Grammar]

*a/an* 4.1

adjective + *enough* 1.3

ADJECTIVES 1

*a lot of* 4.4

*anyone, anything, anywhere* 10.2c

AUXILIARIES 2

*be going to* + infinitive 12.6a

*can* 8.1

*can't* 8.2

Comparatives and Superlatives 1.1

CONDITIONALS 3

Countable and uncountable nouns 9.1

DETERMINERS 4

*everyone, everything, everywhere* 10.2e

Future 12.6

GENITIVE 5

*has/have to* and *not have to* 8.3

*have/has got* 6

*How much/How many* 4.5

Imperative 7

Indefinite pronouns 10.2

*it/there + be* 13.2

MODAL VERBS AND EXPRESSIONS 8

*no one, nothing, nowhere* 10.2d

NOUNS 9

'*of*' genitive 5.2

*one/ones* 10.2a

Past Simple 12.4

Possessive adjectives and pronouns 10.1

Present Continuous 12.2

Present Perfect 12.5

Present Perfect and time adverbials 12.5a

Present Simple 12.1

Present Simple and adverbs of frequency 12.1a

Present Simple and Present Continuous 12.3

PRONOUNS 10

QUESTIONS 11

'*s* genitive 5.1

*So do I/Neither do I* 2.1

*some/any* 4.3

*someone, something, somewhere* 10.2b

TENSES 12

*the* 4.2

*There + be* 13.1

*There + be* and *It + be* 13

*this/that/these/those* 4.6

*too + adjective* 1.2

*will/won't + infinitive* 12.6b

Zero Conditional 3.1



# Mini-Grammar

## 1 ADJECTIVES

Adjectives describe people, places and things:

an **old** man, a **small** house, a **cold** day

In English, adjectives have one form and they do not change to match plural nouns:

a **big** box, **big** boxes

a **black** dog, **black** dogs

Adjectives sometimes go before the noun:

I've got a **new** CD.

She's drinking **hot** coffee.

and sometimes go after the noun and a verb:

This CD is **new**.

My coffee is **hot**.

Some adjectives always go after the noun and a verb, e.g. **afraid**,

**alive**, **alone**, **asleep**, **awake**, **glad**, **ill**, **ready**, **sure**, **well**.

My brother is **ill**. (not ~~My ill brother~~ is in bed.)

The girl was **afraid**. (not ~~The afraid girl~~ screamed.)

### 1.1 Comparatives and Superlatives

#### Use

To compare two (groups of) people or things we use a comparative form of the adjective: **taller**, **bigger**, **more attractive**, **less fashionable** + **than**.

John is **taller** than Mark.

A warm coat is **more useful** than a jacket in winter.

A Fiat is **less expensive** than a Porsche.

To say that one person or thing in a group is unique we use the superlative form of the adjective: **the tallest**, **the biggest**, **the most attractive**, **the least fashionable**.

Peter is **the tallest** student in our class. (He is taller than all the other students.)

The plane is **the most comfortable** means of transport.

**The least interesting** part of my job is photocopying.

#### Form

	adjective	comparative	superlative
one syllable	cheap old	cheaper older	the cheapest the oldest
one syllable ending in -e	nice white	nicer whiter	the nicest the whitest
one syllable with a short vowel + one consonant	fat sad	fatter sadder	the fattest the saddest
two syllables ending in -y	pretty trendy	prettier trendier	the prettiest the trendiest
two or more syllables	attractive  comfortable	more attractive  less comfortable	the most attractive  the least comfortable

Some adjectives are irregular:

good – better – the best

bad – worse – the worst

I'm going to try to get **better** marks next year.

That was **the worst** day in my life.

### 1.2 too + adjective

We use **too** + adjective to say that something has more of a quality than necessary or acceptable:

His hair is **too long**. (It doesn't look good.)

This car is **too expensive** for us. (We can't buy it.)

The tea is **too hot** to drink. (I can't drink it now.)

### 1.3 adjective + enough

We use adjective + **enough** to say that something has the necessary quality and not more:

Her dress is **long enough**.

It was **warm enough** to wear a T-shirt.

We use **not** + adjective + **enough** to say something has less of a quality than necessary:

The weather **wasn't warm enough** to wear shorts. (It was too cold for shorts.)

Agassi **wasn't good enough** to win the match. (He lost.)

## 2 AUXILIARIES

In English we use the auxiliary verbs **be**, **do**, **have** to make different grammatical forms.

We use **be** to form 'continuous' tenses:

He **is learning** the piano.

**Are you learning** English? Yes, I **am**. No I **am not**.

We use **do** to form questions and negative sentences in 'simple' tenses:

**Do they speak** French? Yes, they **do**. No, they **don't**.

Peter **doesn't** play basketball.

**Did you watch** the match yesterday? Yes, I **did**. No, I **didn't**.

We **didn't** see the accident.

We use **have** to form 'perfect' tenses:

Anna **has written** a book.

We **haven't** been to Germany.

**Have you been** to St. Petersburg? Yes, we **have**. No, we **haven't**.

Modal auxiliary verbs, e.g. **can**, **will** express:

ability: I **can** sing very well.

permission: You **can** go home now.

prohibition: You **can't** go out.

prediction: Europe **will** become one country.

## 2.1 So do I/Neither do I

After affirmative sentences, we use *So* + auxiliary + *I* when the statement (A) is also true for the speaker (B):

A: *I like coffee.* B: **So do I.**

A: *I have written a book.* B: **So have I.**

A: *I'm 16.* B: **So am I.**

We use *I* + auxiliary + *not* when the statement (A) is not true for the speaker (B):

A: *I like coffee.* B: **I don't.**

A: *I have written a book.* B: **I haven't.**

A: *I'm 16.* B: **I'm not.**

After negative sentences we use *Neither* + auxiliary + *I* when the statement (A) is also true for the speaker (B):

A: *I don't smoke.* B: **Neither do I.**

A: *I can't swim.* B: **Neither can I.**

A: *I'm not staying here.* B: **Neither am I.**

We use *I* + auxiliary when the statement (A) is not true for the speaker (B):

A: *I don't smoke.* B: **I do.**

A: *I can't swim.* B: **I can.**

A: *I'm not staying here.* B: **I am.**

## 3 CONDITIONALS

### 3.1 Zero conditional

#### Use

We use the Zero Conditional to describe rules and situations where one event always follows the other.

#### Form

We use the pattern *If* + Present Simple, Present Simple; or Present Simple + *if* + Present Simple:

*If he is late, he always has an excuse.*

*We never go out if there is an interesting film on TV.*

*Some animals attack if you come near them.*

In these sentences *if* = *when*.

## 4 DETERMINERS

### 4.1 a/an

#### Use

We use the indefinite article *a/an* in front of singular countable nouns:

- 1 when it doesn't matter which person or thing we are talking about:

*The car broke down so I took it to a garage.* (one of many, it doesn't matter which)

*I'd love to have a cat.* (any cat)

- 2 when we mention something for the first time:

*I saw a woman with a black dog.*

#### Form

We use *a* in front of nouns that start with a consonant: **a job, a cow.**

We use *an* in front of nouns that start with a vowel: **an actress, an exam.**

### 4.2 the

We use the definite article *the* when the other person knows who or what we are talking about:

*I took the car to the garage.* (The garage I usually go to.)

**The** waiter is very nice. (the waiter who took our order)

*I don't like the food here.* (the food they serve in this place)

Compare the sentences:

*Let's call a waiter!* (any waiter, it doesn't matter which waiter we call)

*Let's call the waiter!* (the waiter who served us)

### 4.3 some/any

We use *some* and *any* in front of plural and uncountable nouns.

We usually use *some* in affirmative sentences:

*We've got some good friends.*

*I'd like some milk and yoghurt.*

*The soup needs some salt.*

We usually use *any* in questions and negative sentences:

*Have you read any Harry Potter books?*

*Is there any soup left?*

*There isn't any bread.*

We also use *some* in questions when they are offers or requests or when we expect a 'yes' answer:

*Would you like some tea?*

*Can I have some water, please?*

*Are you making some sandwiches for the picnic?*

### 4.4 a lot of

We use *a lot of* with plural and uncountable nouns. It means 'a large number or amount of':

*There were a lot of famous people at the concert.*

*They earn a lot of money.*

*She's got a lot of jazz CDs.*

In negative sentences we usually use *many* with countable nouns and *much* with uncountable nouns:

*I don't buy many CDs.*

*I haven't got much time.*

We use a singular verb with an uncountable noun:

*There is a lot of cola left after the party.*

*A lot of fast food is unhealthy.*

We use a plural verb with plural nouns:

*A lot of people at the party were very nice.*

*There are a lot of stories about ghosts.*

### 4.5 How much/How many

We use *How much...* and *How many...* in questions about quantity.

We use *How much...* in front of uncountable nouns:

**How much** water do you drink every day?

**How much** (money) does it cost to fly to London?

**How much** time have you got?

We use *How many...* in front of plural countable nouns:

**How many** languages do you know?

**How many** people came to the party?

**How many** films have you seen this month?

## 4.6 this/that/these/those

We use *this* (singular) and *these* (plural) for people and things that are close to us:

*I bought **this** jacket last summer. (I'm wearing/holding it.)*

*I love **these** apples. (I'm holding/eating them.)*

We use *that* (singular) and *those* (plural) for people and things that are not so close to us:

*I didn't like **that** film. (I saw it some time ago.)*

***Those** boys are waiting for a bus. (They are quite far away from us.)*

We use *this/that* with singular nouns:

***This** dress is lovely.*

*What size is **that** hat?*

We use *these/those* with plural nouns:

*I'll take **these** shoes.*

*Don't be afraid of **those** dogs.*

## 5 GENITIVE

### 5.1 's genitive

We use 's at the end of a noun to say that something belongs to a person or an animal, or is part of them:

*John's room (the room belongs to John)*

*Mary's eyes (the eyes are part of Mary)*

*the cat's bowl (the bowl is for the cat)*

We add 's to all singular nouns, and plural nouns that don't end in -s (e.g. *men, women, children*):

*Dave's daughters*

*the girl's dress*

*Chris's birthday*

*the men's toilet*

*the children's playground*

We add an apostrophe (') to plural nouns that end in -s:

*the ladies' toilet*

*my parents' bathroom*

Compare:

*my friend's house*

*my friends' house*

### 5.2 'of' genitive

We often use *of* (the) when something is part of a place or thing (not part of a person or an animal):

*the streets **of** London*

*the end **of** the book*

*the colour **of** your hair*

## 6 have/has got

Use

1 to talk about possessions:

*I've **got** a new bike.*

*She's **got** very nice shoes.*

***Have** you **got** the ticket?*

*He **hasn't got** a mobile phone.*

2 in descriptions:

*I've **got** blue eyes.*

***Has** he **got** long hair?*

Form

I		
You	have got/'ve got	a computer.
We	haven't got	
They		
He	has got/'s got	a garden.
She	hasn't got	
It		

Have	I You We They	got	a mobile phone?	Yes, I/you/we/they have. No, I/you/we/they haven't.
Has	He She It		a fax number?	Yes, he/she/it has. No, he/she/it hasn't.

## 7 Imperative

We use the infinitive for positive commands:

***Sit** down and have a cup of tea.*

***Look** at the picture.*

***Stop** talking, please!*

We use *don't* + infinitive for negative commands:

***Don't** worry.*

***Don't** open the books.*

***Don't** make a noise!*

## 8 MODAL VERBS AND EXPRESSIONS

*Can, may, will* and *must* are examples of modal auxiliary verbs.

Modal verbs have special rules.

Form

- After modal verbs we use an infinitive without *to*:  
*I **can** cook. She **can** swim underwater.*
- The third person singular doesn't take -s:  
*He **can** play the piano.*
- To form the negative, we use a modal verb + *not*:  
*We **can't** phone him now. She **can't** ski.*
- To form questions, we change the position of the modal verb and the subject:  
***Can** you wait a moment? **Can** she speak English?*

### 8.1 can

We use *can*

1 to say that something is possible/allowed:

*We **can** go home now if we want.*

*You **can** buy food on the train.*

***Can** I go to Anna's house this evening?*

2 to talk about ability:

*I **can** run very fast.*

*He **can** ride a horse.*

*This mobile phone **can** receive email.*

## 8.2 can't / Neither do I

We use **can't**

- 1 to say that something is not possible/not allowed:  
*You **can't** go out tonight.*  
*In football, you **can't** touch the ball with your hand.*  
*You **can't** take your dog into a restaurant.*
- 2 to talk about lack of ability:  
*I **can't** ride a horse.*  
*She **can't** speak Spanish.*  
*He **can't** play the guitar well.*

## 8.3 has/have to and not have to

We use **have to** to say that something is necessary, that we are obliged to do something:

*You **have to** drive on the left in Britain.*

*I **have to** go to the dentist.*

*Do we **have to** give them a present?*

We use **do/does not have to** to say that something is not necessary, that we are not obliged to do something:

*You **don't have to** buy the ticket before the game – you can buy one at the gate.*

*I **don't have to** take a bus to school – I can walk.*

*She **doesn't have to** hurry, it's still very early.*

## 9 NOUNS

### 9.1 Countable and uncountable nouns

In English, nouns can be countable (*a man, a table, an apple*) and uncountable (*milk, money, time*).

Countable nouns:

- can be singular or plural (*flower – flowers*): *The flower **is** red.*  
*The flowers **are** lovely.*
- can have numbers in front of them: *I have **two** cats.* *There are **six** men in the team.*
- take *how many* in questions: ***How many** people are coming to the wedding?* ***How many** children are there in your family?*

Uncountable nouns:

- are always singular: *water, hair, news.*
- always appear with a singular verb: *The news **is** at 6 p.m.*  
*Tea **is** my favourite drink.*
- cannot have numbers: *I need some/a lot of water.*
- cannot have *a* in front of them: *I like cola and mineral water.*

BUT we can say *a tea, a mineral water, a coffee* when we mean a cup/glass of tea/water.

- take *how much* in questions: ***How much** time do you need?*  
***How much** cola do you drink?*
- have words such as *some, any, a little, a lot of* in front of them: *Is there **any** time left?* *We need **a little** more paint.*

## 10 PRONOUNS

Pronouns are words such as *she, him, mine*. We use them like nouns and we often use a pronoun so we don't have to repeat a noun:

*John came to school today but I didn't see **him**.* (not ~~John came to school today but I didn't see John.~~)

*The books on the floor are **mine**.* (not ~~The books on the floor are my books.~~)

## 10.1 Possessive adjectives and pronouns

Use

We use possessive adjectives in front of nouns:

***My friend**, John, loves travelling.*

*I love **your shoes** – they are so fashionable.*

***Our class** is the best in the school.*

We use possessive pronouns without a noun:

*The black dog is **mine**.*

*Those books and notebooks are **yours**.*

*This classroom is **ours**.*

Form

subject pronoun	possessive adjective	possessive pronoun
I	my	mine
you	your	yours
he	his	his
she	her	hers
it	it	its
we	our	ours
they	their	theirs

## 10.2 Indefinite pronouns

### 10.2a one/ones

We use *one* when we do not want to repeat a singular countable noun and *ones* when we do not want to repeat a plural countable noun:

*Do you have a pencil? I need **one** to do my homework?*

*I don't like this dress very much. Could you show me another **one**?*

*'Which CD do you prefer?' 'I like the **one** by Ricki Martin.'*

*I don't need new shoes – my old **ones** are very comfortable.*

### 10.2b someone, something, somewhere

We use *someone, something, somewhere* in affirmative sentences, offers and requests to mean a person/thing/place:

*What's that noise? There is **someone** upstairs.*

*He knows **something** about Kate but he doesn't want to tell us.*

*I met her **somewhere** in Spain.*

*Can I have **something** to drink?*

These pronouns are singular and we use them with singular verbs:

***Someone** is calling you.*

*The box is heavy. There is **something** in it.*

### 10.2c anyone, anything, anywhere

We use *anyone, anything, anywhere* in questions and negative sentences to mean 'it doesn't matter which person/thing/place':

*I didn't see **anyone** in the garden.*

*Have you eaten **anything** today?*

*Have you seen my pen? I can't find it **anywhere**.*

These pronouns are singular and we use them with singular verbs:

*Is there **anyone** here?*

*There isn't **anything** interesting on TV tonight.*

### 10.2d no one, nothing, nowhere

*No one, nothing, nowhere* have a negative meaning: 'not even one person/thing/place'.

We do not use any other negative form with these pronouns:

***No one** enjoyed the party.*



I said **nothing** to him. = I didn't say **anything** to him.  
(NOT ~~I didn't say nothing to him.~~)  
We had **nowhere** to go.

These pronouns are singular and we use them with singular verbs:  
**No one** likes Peter.

**Nothing** is more exciting than a horror film.

## 10.2e everyone, everything, everywhere

Everyone, everything, everywhere mean 'all people/things/places':

**Everyone** was late.

I eat **everything**.

I've looked **everywhere** but I can't find him.

These pronouns are singular and we use them with singular verbs:  
**Everyone** speaks English here.

**Everything** is closed on Sundays.

## 11 QUESTIONS

To form questions we put the auxiliary verb (*be, have, has* or a modal) in front of the subject of the sentence:

We are going to town. → **Are** we going to town?

She has bought a new bag. → **Has** she bought a new bag?

We can go home now. → **Can** we go home now?

If there is no auxiliary, as in the Present Simple or the Past Simple, we use *do, does* or *did* in front of the subject:

They learn a lot. → **Do** they learn a lot?

He goes to school by bus. → **Does** he go to school by bus?

We bought the cakes. → **Did** we buy the cakes?

Questions that start with an auxiliary verb (*be, do, have*) or a modal (e.g. *can, will*) are called Yes/No questions:

**Are** you hungry? **No**, I'm not.

**Do** you speak Russian? **Yes**, I do.

**Has** John been to the United States? **No**, he hasn't.

**Can** I sit here? **Yes**, you can

**Will** you help me? **Yes**, I will.

Questions that start with *who, what, which, when, where, why, what time, how, how many*, etc. are called Wh-questions:

**Who** is that? It's my brother.

**Where** do they go on holiday? They usually go to the seaside.

**When** does the school year in England start? It starts on 3 September.

**How much** is this T-shirt? It's £6.50.

**What** did you have for breakfast? I had an egg and some toast.

Questions about the subject start with *who* or *what* but they look like statements:

**Who** bought this cake?

**Who** has done this?

**What** has happened to you?

Compare questions about the subject with questions about the object:

**Who** asked Peter to the party? (we ask about the subject of the verb ask)

→ Mary asked Peter.

**Who** did Peter ask to the party? (we ask about the object of the verb ask)

→ Peter asked Hannah.

**Who** helped John to cook lunch? (question about the subject)

→ Mike did.

**Who** did Mike help to cook lunch? (question about the object)

→ He helped John.

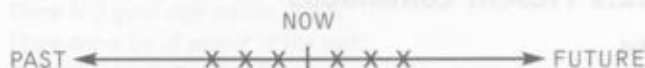
## 12 TENSES

### 12.1 Present Simple

#### Use

We use the Present Simple to talk about:

- things that we do regularly (routines, habits):

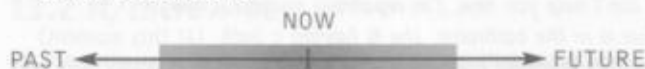


I **go** to the gym every Saturday.

We **get up** at 7.30 in the morning.

He **sings** in a pop group.

- permanent situations:



We **have** two sons and two daughters.

They **live** in London.

I **don't like** meat.

- things that are true in general:

Spiders **have** eight legs.

Elephants **eat** 200 kilograms of food every day.

#### Form

In statements, we add -s or -es in the third person singular:

He **loves** football.

She **teaches** English at a grammar school.

For verbs that end in -y, we change -y to -ies:

He **carries** a lot of books to school.

Rules for pronouncing the -s ending:

/z/ after a voiced sound (vowels /b/, /d/, /g/, /m/, /n/, /v/, /w/):  
goes, robs, rains, shows

/s/ after a voiceless sound (/t/, /k/, /p/, /tʃ/): talks, shops, puts

/ɪz/ after /s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/, /ks/: catches, kisses, fixes

We also say /ɪz/ for -ies: carries, worries.

In questions, negative sentences and short answers we use *does* (for 3rd person singular) or *do* (for other grammatical persons):

**Do** you often go out? Yes, we **do**. / No, we **don't**.

**Does** Mary work at a bank? Yes, she **does**. / No, she **doesn't**.

**What do** they want for their wedding present?

I **don't** speak Japanese.

Peter **doesn't** play the guitar.

### 12.1a Present Simple and adverbs of frequency

We use the following adverbs of frequency with the Present Simple:

*always, usually, often, sometimes, never.*

I **always** have a cup of coffee in the morning.

They **sometimes** go out during the week.

In affirmative sentences we put the adverb between the subject and the verb, but after the verb *be*.

He **usually** arrives on time.

He **is never** late.

In negative sentences we put *always, usually, often* between *don't/doesn't* and the verb:

We **don't usually** have geography on Tuesdays.

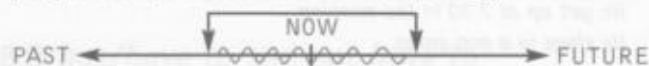
He **doesn't often** go to parties.

She **doesn't always** finish school so late.

## 12.2 Present Continuous

### Use

We use the Present Continuous to talk about activities that are going on now (at or around the time of speaking):



I **can't help you now, I'm repairing** my bike. (now)

Sue **is in the bathroom, she is having** a bath. (at this moment)

John **is learning** Hungarian – he wants to go to Hungary next year. (in this period of time, not necessarily at this moment)

### Form

We form the Present Continuous with a present form of *be* + verb *-ing*:

I'm **having** a shower.

We're **doing** our homework.

She **is making** tea.

Are you **staying** at a hotel? Yes, I **am**. No, I'm **not**.

Is she **carrying** a bag? Yes, she **is**. No, she **isn't**.

I **am not working** at the moment.

He **isn't laughing** at you.

They **aren't talking** about us.

#### Rules for the spelling of *-ing*

- 1 when the verb ends with a consonant + *e* (*write, smile, come*), we drop the final *-e* and add *-ing*: *writing, smiling, coming*
- 2 when the verb ends with one vowel + one consonant (*put, run, sit*), we double the final consonant (*putting, running, sitting*) except after *-w* and *-x* (*knowing, fixing*)

## 12.3 Present Simple and Present Continuous

We use the Present Simple to talk about things that happen regularly or are generally true. We use the Present Continuous to talk about things happening now or around now.

I **usually come** back from school at 4 p.m. (it happens regularly)

Cats **sleep** a lot during the day. (this is generally true)

My brother **is swimming** in the sea. (now)

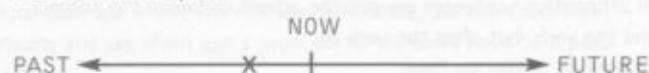
My neighbours **are having** a party – it's very noisy upstairs. (at the moment)

IKEA **is having** a sale this month. (for the period of time around now)

## 12.4 Past Simple

### Use

We use the Past Simple to talk about finished actions and situations in the past:



Last summer I **spent** my holidays in Greece.

We **met** in Scotland in 1998.

He **wrote** his first book when he was eighteen.

### Form

- 1 For regular verbs in the Past Simple, we add *-ed* to the infinitive:

We **talked** all night.

She **looked** at me and **smiled**.

- 2 Verbs that end in *-y* change *-y* to *-ied*:

carry – **carried**.

- 3 Irregular verbs:

We **read** the newspaper and **found** some interesting adverts.

He **wrote** to me every day.

For the past forms of irregular verbs, see the list in the Students' Book Mini-dictionary.

#### Rules for pronouncing *-ed*:

/d/ after voiced sounds (vowels /b/, /d/, /g/, /l/, /m/, /n/, /r/, /v/, /w/, /ɜ:/): *smiled, opened, loved*

/t/ after voiceless sounds (/t/, /k/, /ks/, /p/, /f/, /tʃ/): *cooked, escaped, laughed, watched*

/ɪd/ after /t/ and /d/: *landed, needed*

We also use /ɪd/ for *-ied*: *worried, married*.

In questions, negative sentences and short answers we use *did* or *didn't* and the infinitive without *to*.

**Did you talk** to Susan? Yes, I **did**.

**Did Peter come** to your birthday party? No, he **didn't**.

We **didn't like** the film.

Harry **didn't cook** the meal, his mother **did**.

Why **didn't you come** to school yesterday?

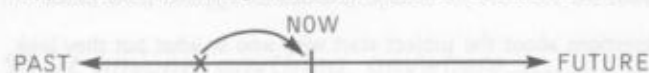
The verb *to be* is an exception.

I/he/she/it	was	hungry.
You/we/they	were	
I/he/she/it	wasn't	
You/we/they	weren't	

Was	I/he/she/it	hungry?	Yes, I/he/she/it was.
Were	You/we/they		No, you/we/they weren't.

## 12.5 Present Perfect

We use the Present Perfect to talk about something that happened during the period that continues up to the present. However, we don't know, or it is not important, exactly when it happened. We are mostly interested in someone's experience:



I **haven't read** *War and Peace*. (in the past until now)

We **have been** to New York and Washington. (it doesn't matter when exactly)

She **has won** Wimbledon three times. (in her life so far)

**Have you ever played** ice-hockey? (at any time in the past, up to now)

### Form

We form the Present Perfect with *have/has* + third form of the verb.

I've **climbed** Mont Blanc.

She's **seen** a UFO.

**Have you ever eaten** seafood?

**Has she told** you about her new job?

I **haven't seen** Paul for a long time.

He **hasn't been** abroad.

## 12.5a Present Perfect and time adverbials

We use the following time adverbials with the Present Perfect: *ever* (only in questions), *never*, *just*. They all appear before the main verb.

*Have you **ever** travelled by plane?*

*She has **never** beaten Venus Williams.*

*They have **just** come back from abroad.*

## 12.6 Future

### 12.6a *be going to* + infinitive

#### Use

We use *be going to* + infinitive without *to* to talk about intentions:

*We're **going to move** to the mountains.*

*They're **going to get** married.*

*Monica **is going to study** law.*

*Do you know what you're **going to do** when you leave school?*

#### Form

*I'm **going to leave** soon.*

*Are you **going to see** David this weekend?*

*What **are you going to make** for lunch?*

*They're **not going to come** to school tomorrow.*

### 12.6b *will/won't* + infinitive

#### Use

We use *will* and *won't*

- 1 to make predictions about the future:

*In the future, more people **will** work from home.*

*I think Peter and Jane **will** be very happy together.*

- 2 to take a sudden decision at the moment of speaking, e.g. to make an offer or promise, or to refuse to do something:

decision: *I think I'll **go** to bed.*

offer: *Sit down and relax – I'll **wash up**.*

promise: *Don't worry, I **won't be** late!.*

refusal: *I **won't help** you this time.*

#### Form

After *will* and *won't*, we always use the infinitive without *to*.

*You **will find** it on our website.*

*We **won't win** the match – we have no chance.*

*Will world travel **become** cheaper?*

## 13 *There + be* and *It + be*

### 13.1 *There + be*

#### Use

We use *there is/are* to say that something is present in a particular place:

***There is** a good café on the corner.*

***There are** a lot of people in the park.*

***Is there** a bank near here?*

***Are there** any books about the history of London in the library?*

***There isn't** a computer room at my school.*

***There aren't** any new CDs in this shop.*

### 13.2 *it/there + be*

We use *there + be + noun* when we want to say that something is/was present in a place:

***There was** an accident in front of the Hilton Hotel.*

***There are** some very good films on TV this week.*

We use *it + be + noun* to identify someone or something:

***It's** Mary – she wants to talk to you.*

*Who's that? **It's** Professor Jones.*

We use *it + be + adjective* to describe something:

***It was** nice and warm.*

***It's** very clean and modern.*

Compare the use of *it* and *there* in these sentences:

***There is** a field opposite my home. **It is** full of wild flowers.*

***There's** a new film about dinosaurs. **It's** very exciting.*

Pearson Education Limited

Edinburgh Gate

Harlow

Essex

CM20 2JE

England

and Associated Companies throughout the World.

www.longman.com

©Pearson Education 2006

Seventh Impression 2009

The right of Olivia Johnston and Christina Ruse to be identified as authors of this work has been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patent Act 1988.

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

ISBN: 978-0-582-85410-9

Set in ITC Officina 10.5/13.5pt

Printed in Malaysia, VVP

Cover photograph © Robert Harding (Charles Bowman)

### Acknowledgements

The authors and publishers would like to thank Michael Dean for his work on the original edition and the following people for their help in the development of this course:

Jana Pernicova (Czech Republic), Elisabetta Guidotti (Bologna), Laura Strappa (Bologna), Delia Melchioni (Bologna), Susanna Magnani (Bologna), Susanna Ricciuti (Ferrara), Teresa Pouncey (Ferrara), Margherita Merola (Ferrara), Daniela Cova (Ferrara), Adriana Tepelea (Romania), Simona Dancu (Romania), Szalkáné Gyapay Márta (Budapest), Illés Éva (Budapest), Monica Barone (Italy)

### Text permission

Extracts adapted from *Extreme Sports* by Michael Dean, Penguin Readers, ©Michael Dean, Penguin Readers 2001; ISBN 0582461685; Penguin Readers website [www.penguinreaders.com](http://www.penguinreaders.com)

### Photograph acknowledgements

We are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce photographs:

A1 Pix: page 70 (b); Alamy: page 82 (Mozart and Pele) (Popperfoto); Art Directors and TRIP: page 70 (tm) (B Crawshaw); Brazil Pictures: page 106 (Ricardo Funari and Jose Caldas); Corbis: page 39 (tr) (BEAWIHARTA/Reuters), page 68 (Michael Nicholson); page 82

(Navratilova) (Reuters); Empics: page 82 (Mandela) (EPA); Mary Evans Picture Library: page 70 (Steven Rumney Collection); Eye Ubiquitous: page 70 (bm); Forum: page 60, 88, 116; Getty Images: page 39 (tl) (Schouten/AFP); page 52 (Time Life Pictures); Robert Harding Picture Library: page 29 (John Miller); ImageState: page 3; Movie Store Collection: page 82 (t); Performing Arts Library: page 36 (b); Photos for Books: page 71; Rijksmuseum Vincent Van Gogh, Amsterdam, The Netherlands, J.P. Peter Zenobel/[www.bridgeman.co.uk](http://www.bridgeman.co.uk); page 82 (Van Gogh); Stone: page 70 (m) (Paul Chesley); Stone+: page 44 (Mike Powell); Taxi: page 70 (t) (Richard Price); Topfoto: page 39 (b) (UPP); Topham: page 82 (Jagger) (PA); Zefa: page 32.

Picture Research by Louise Edgeworth

Every effort has been made to trace the copyright holders and we apologise in advance for any unintentional omissions. We would be pleased to insert the appropriate acknowledgement in any subsequent edition of this publication.

### Illustrators

Mike Bastin, Jonny Boatfield, Phillip Burrows, Paul B. Davies, Max Ellis, Maureen and Gordon Gray, Illustrated Arts, Pippa Sterne, Brian Williamson, David Woodroffe

Prepared for publication by AMR Design Ltd.



# NEW Opportunities

## Education for life!

Based on feedback from teachers and students around the world, New Opportunities now comes with new features and components to make your lessons even more motivating and successful.

- New Reading and Listening Texts motivate students to speak and think in English.
- New exam Zones in the Powerbook build students' exam skills and confidence
- New Comprehensive testing programme provides total evaluation for students
- Grammar and skills development give students a solid base for learning
- Training in independent study skills ensures good learning habits
- Cross curricular and cross cultural topics motivate students and engage their interest in the wider world

New Opportunities is now, more than ever, the perfect choice for teachers who want to give their students education for life!

### *Components*

Student's Book with mini-dictionary and CD-ROM, Language Powerbook including Mini Grammar & Exam Zones, Teacher's Book with Test Builder and extra activities, Class cassettes/CDs, Test Book/Cassette Pack, Quick Tests, Videos/DVDs



PEARSON  
Longman



ISBN 0-582-85410-5



9 780582 854109